

SUGGESTIONS TO AUTHORS  
OF  
THE REPORTS OF THE  
UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY

*Sixth Edition*



SUGGESTIONS TO AUTHORS

*OF*

*THE REPORTS OF THE*

*UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY*

*Sixth Edition*

*By Elna E. Bishop, Edwin B. Eckel, and Others*

*John H. Eric, Coordinator*

U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington : 1978

UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF THE INTERIOR  
CECIL D. ANDRUS, *Secretary*

GEOLOGICAL SURVEY  
V. E. McKelvey, *Director*

First edition, 1909  
Second edition, 1913  
Third edition, 1916  
Fourth edition, 1935  
Fifth edition, 1958  
Sixth edition, 1978

## FOREWORD

This sixth edition of "Suggestions to Authors" continues and extends the United States Geological Survey's concern that its reports be clear and understandable. Beginning with its first informal pamphlet on the subject in 1888, the Survey's advice to its authors has emphasized precise and concise use of plain language—"Plain Geology," as Director George Otis Smith put it in the title of his 1915 essay urging writers to express themselves in simple, direct, and clearly understandable terms.

The need for "plain geology" has evolved into the need for "plain earth science" and that need is greater now than ever before: For the sake of our very survival, legislators, policy-making officials, and the general public must come to understand the resource and environmental limitations of the Earth and its processes, and they must be abreast of the results of scientific investigations.

Many scientific communications to this wide audience must be accomplished in two or more stages. First will be the scientific report, which will use scientific terms and phrases to convey precise meanings for which a page or more of description might not be an adequate substitute. Written in "plain earth science," some results may be conveyed in terms useful at once to scientists and the general public. Other results may require translation into simpler, more general terms to reach all those who need the information. More and more, we in the Geological Survey—and other scientists as well—must ask ourselves: Are we communicating our findings in understandable form to those who need them? If the answer is "no," we must be willing to go the extra mile.

Regardless of the audience our varied reports are intended to reach, the information and advice contained in this sixth edition of "Suggestions to Authors" will be helpful to those preparing the reports.

O. E. McKelvey

*Director*



## PREFACE

Like the five preceding editions, this sixth edition of "Suggestions to Authors of the Reports of the United States Geological Survey" (STA 6) is written primarily for authors employed by the Survey. For this reason "Survey" appears on many pages. So, too, do references to Survey routines, practices, and philosophy. But though our primary audience is Survey authors, we hope STA 6 will also be used and found helpful by non-Survey earth-science authors, just as earlier editions have been widely used and cited through many years.

We have tried to follow John Ruskin's advice to say what we have to say "in the fewest possible words" and "in the plainest possible words." We have written with the constant awareness of Director V. E. McKelvey's concern that Survey "maps and reports \* \* \* have been released in a form \* \* \* understandable only by other earth scientists. Little wonder that the general public lacks understanding of fundamental resource and environmental problems."

Which is to say that the purpose of scientific communication, written, graphic, or oral, is the same as that of any other kind of communication: to communicate. We hope that followers of STA 6 may communicate with a little more effectiveness and ease and grace than nonfollowers.

We have omitted some of the matter included in earlier editions of STA that, by its nature, quickly became obsolete; we thought these short-lived phenomena were better left to the Survey's technical-standards people. For some subjects we have referred the reader to more comprehensive writings of others. Earth-science research, and the reporting of it, has become too diverse to be covered in detail in a manageable one-volume set of suggestions.

At some places it has been necessary to specify the subdiscipline(s) under discussion and (or) the subdisciplinarian(s) we are addressing, but at many places we use "geologist(s)" in a generic sense to apply to male and female hydrologists, engineers, cartographers, mineralogists, stratigraphers, paleontologists, chemists, physicists, oceanographers, geographers—any member of the Geological Survey who may prepare results of scientific investigations for publication.

We have qualified many of our statements, and the reader will find numerous "in general's." We have tried to base our suggestions on the fact that English is a marvelously rich and flexible language. It has few

absolutes, and there "are an almost infinite number of ways to express almost anything" (U.S. Treasury Department Internal Revenue Service [1962], "Effective Revenue Writing 2," p. 4); we intended to avoid imperative verbs, but a good many seem to have slipped through. We have tried to obey, and urge our readers to do likewise, the command of the late William Strunk, Jr. of Cornell University to "Omit needless words!" and we add our own admonition, "Avoid gobbledygook!"

Zealous readers may discover herewithin inconsistencies of usage and violations of our own precepts. If they do, it won't be necessary to write us. Our story would be that we did it on purpose, to illustrate our basic philosophy that "Suggestions" are suggestions, intended to be applied with common sense and with the knowledge that there are many ways "to express almost anything."

E.E.B.

E.B.E.

# CONTENTS

---

	Page
Foreword .....	III
Preface .....	V
Publications of the Geological Survey .....	1
Choice of publication format .....	4
The Survey publications process .....	5
The human factors .....	8
Author and technical reviewer .....	8
Author and editor .....	12
References .....	13
Obstructions in the writer's path .....	15
Of obligations, duties, ethics, and good practices .....	18
1. Learn to write .....	18
2. Be accurate .....	20
3. Finish your work promptly .....	20
4. Acknowledge explicitly all cooperation, sources, and borrowed data .....	21
5. Identify authority for cited non-Survey data .....	22
6. Much may be in a name .....	22
Reference .....	22
Reports should be intelligible .....	23
"Omit needless words!" .....	24
"Avoid gobbledygook!" .....	25
References .....	27
Aids for writers .....	28
Dictionaries .....	28
Word guides .....	29
Grammar and style guides .....	30
Miscellaneous .....	31
Planning and starting the report .....	32
The first step .....	32
Parallel chores .....	33
Reference .....	35
Additional aids .....	35
The parts of the report .....	37
Title page .....	37
Title .....	37
Authorship .....	38
Statement of cooperation .....	39
Descriptive statement .....	39
Front matter .....	40
Foreword and preface .....	40
"Contents," "Illustrations," and "Tables" .....	40
Abstract .....	42
Reference .....	43
Text .....	43
The beginning .....	43

	Page
The parts of the report—Continued	
Text—Continued	
Presentation of data .....	44
Headings .....	45
Footnotes .....	45
The end .....	45
The reference list .....	46
The appendix, if any .....	46
Index .....	46
Reference .....	47
Illustrations, by Ann C. Christiansen and Douglas M. Kinney .....	48
Planning .....	48
Preparation of author copy .....	51
Captions .....	52
Use of abbreviations .....	54
Credits, acknowledgments, and copyrights .....	54
Technical review of author copy .....	55
Transmittal for approval and preparation .....	57
Review of publication drafting .....	58
Disposition of original illustrations and photographs .....	59
Kinds of illustrations and their special requirements .....	59
Geologic, geophysical, and hydrologic maps .....	59
Explanations .....	60
Geologic map symbols .....	62
Cross sections .....	62
Fence diagrams .....	65
Stratigraphic sections, lithologic columnar sections, and well logs .....	65
Index maps .....	66
Photographs .....	66
Sketches from photographs .....	68
Fossil plates .....	68
Aerial photographs and shaded-relief maps .....	68
Frontispieces .....	69
Graphs and diagrams .....	69
Mine maps .....	72
Engineering drawings .....	72
References .....	72
Additional reading .....	73
Matters of style .....	74
References .....	74
Reference in text .....	74
Reference list .....	76
Examples of cited references .....	79
Additional reading .....	81
References .....	82
Tables .....	82
Sample tables .....	84
References .....	90
Numerals .....	90
Reference .....	92
Quotations .....	92
Italics .....	93
Abbreviations, signs, and symbols .....	93
Some abbreviations, signs, and symbols used in Survey reports, compiled by Anna May Orellana .....	99
Typing the manuscript .....	109
Instructions for typists .....	110
Proofreading .....	112

	Page
Reports on water resources, by the Water Resources Division staff .....	116
Choosing the type of report .....	116
Resource-appraisal reports .....	116
Research reports .....	120
Reports on critical problems .....	120
Basic-data reports .....	121
Data presentation .....	121
Real-time data .....	124
Water-resources terms .....	124
References .....	125
Additional reading .....	126
Mineral reserves and resources, by Donald A. Brobst .....	127
References .....	129
Stratigraphic nomenclature and description, by Marjorie E. MacLachlan and George V. Cohee .....	130
Geologic Names Committee .....	131
Conformance to the Code and stratigraphic change .....	133
New names .....	134
Changes in age designations .....	135
Abandoned names .....	135
Changes in lithologic designation .....	136
Stratigraphic redefinition .....	136
Assignment to another stratigraphic unit .....	136
Change in stratigraphic rank .....	136
Geographic extension or restriction .....	137
Reinstatement of an abandoned name .....	137
Stratigraphic descriptions .....	137
Text matter .....	137
Explanations for geologic maps .....	138
Correlation of map units .....	140
Description of map units .....	140
Stratigraphic map symbols .....	141
Correlation charts and stratigraphic tables .....	142
Measured sections .....	143
Internal consistency .....	146
Media for publishing stratigraphic information .....	146
U.S. Geological Survey publications .....	146
Publications restrictions .....	147
Stratigraphic style and expression .....	147
Abbreviations .....	147
Diverse time terms .....	148
Divisions of the Precambrian .....	148
Phanerozoic .....	149
Carboniferous .....	149
Divisions of the Tertiary .....	149
Provincial land-mammal ages of the Tertiary .....	149
Neoglaciation .....	151
Earl, Middle, and Late vs. Lower, Middle, and Upper .....	151
Formal nomenclature, examples .....	152
Capitalization .....	153
Diacritical marks .....	153
Undesirable expressions .....	154
Expressions for degrees of doubt .....	154
Formal vs. informal names .....	154
Quotation marks .....	155
Units of economic, local, subsurface, or regional interest .....	155
References .....	156

	Page
Geographic names, by Donald J. Orth .....	159
U.S. Board on Geographic Names .....	159
Domestic geographic names .....	159
Proposing new names .....	160
Name-change proposals .....	161
Domestic names decisions .....	161
Foreign geographic names .....	162
Nature of geographic names .....	163
Capitalization of geographic names .....	164
Geographic-geologic names .....	165
Diacritical and other marks .....	165
Abbreviations and number names .....	166
Petrologic terminology .....	167
Normative mineral and molecule tables .....	168
Reference .....	169
Chemical terminology .....	170
References .....	173
Mineralogic terminology and descriptions .....	174
References .....	176
Paleontologic matter, by J. Thomas Dutro, Jr. ....	178
Synonymy .....	179
A few guidelines .....	181
References .....	182
Numbering systems for samples and specimens .....	183
Geologic reports and the computer, by Ralph N. Eicher .....	184
Equipment and technology .....	184
Training and technical support .....	185
Data-base systems .....	186
Dissemination of data-base information .....	187
Automated bibliographic searches .....	188
Characteristics of interactive computer terminals .....	189
Documentation of computer programs and automated data systems .....	189
Computer-related dictionaries .....	190
The metric system, by Solomon M. Lang and Anna May Orellana .....	192
References .....	196
Significant figures .....	197
Rounding off numbers .....	198
Absolute and relative errors .....	199
Arithmetic operations .....	199
Examples of misuse of significant figures .....	201
Rejecting inconsistent erratic data .....	202
Reference .....	202
Press releases, by Donovan B. Kelly .....	203
Review of English I .....	206
The subject and the predicate .....	207
Problems with verbs .....	209
Mood .....	210
Choice of tense .....	211
Sequence of tenses .....	212
Voice .....	213
The hybrids (verbals) .....	214
Gerunds .....	214
Infinitives .....	214
Participles, past and present .....	215
Adroit use of modifiers .....	217
"Strung-on" modifiers .....	219
Placement and form of adverbs .....	220

	Page
Review of English I—Continued	
Pronouns .....	220
Punctuation, its uses and power .....	223
The comma .....	224
The period .....	227
The semicolon .....	228
Brackets .....	229
Parentheses .....	229
The dash .....	230
Quotation and ellipsis marks .....	230
Spelling .....	231
Compounding .....	231
Capitalization .....	234
Parallel construction .....	236
Suggestions as to expression .....	239
Miscellaneous aids to clarity .....	255
References .....	258
Index .....	259

---

## ILLUSTRATIONS

---

	Page
FIGURE 1. Commonly used geologic map symbols .....	63
2. Sample explanation of some geologic map symbols .....	64
3. Types of graphs .....	70
4. Classification of mineral resources .....	128
5. Part of a typical map explanation .....	138
6. Typical chart showing correlation of Upper Cretaceous rocks ..	143

---

## TABLES

---

	Page
TABLE 1a. Major stratigraphic and time divisions .....	150
1b. Provincial series used in Survey reports .....	151
2. Atomic weights, 1975 .....	171
3. Conversion factor for SI metric and U.S. customary units of measurement .....	193



# SUGGESTIONS TO AUTHORS OF *THE REPORTS OF THE UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY*

---

## PUBLICATIONS OF THE GEOLOGICAL SURVEY

The Act of Congress which created it in 1879 established the obligation of the U.S. Geological Survey to make public the results of its investigations. These published reports have fallen into two general categories, cartographic and textual, each with supplemental cross-data as needed. The cartographic reports have consisted of topographic, geologic, and hydrologic maps and atlases. The textual reports also have been published in such varied series and formats as were best suited to the material at hand.

For a few years the Survey's cartographic and textual reports appeared only as inclusions to annual reports to the Secretary of the Interior. The first of the separately published book-report series, U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1, and the first "Mineral Resources of the United States" (for the calendar year 1882) were published in 1883. Since then, many book reports and maps have been published to record results of investigations of the physical features and resources of the Nation and of parts of the Earth and of the universe.

The individual publications of the Survey through 1970 are listed in two catalogs, "Publications of the Geological Survey," that cover the periods 1879-1961 and 1962-70. Supplementary monthly and annual lists of reports published after 1970 will be periodically combined into other catalogs. The catalogs and supplementary lists, which may be obtained free from many Survey offices, contain directions for ordering available listed items. Many earlier Survey publications are out of print but may be consulted in Survey libraries and in public and institutional libraries.

Survey employees may be issued free copies of any Survey publications that are available and are needed for official use.

In addition to reports published under its own imprint, the Survey releases much of its investigative information through other media. Thousands of Survey-generated reports have been published by co-operating Federal, State, and foreign governmental agencies, and other thousands have been published in scientific and technical journals.

Survey authors should become familiar with the particular Survey series or outside medium toward which their report is pointed for publication. Most publishing organizations have style manuals or technical standards for guidance of their would-be contributors. "Suggestions to Authors" (STA) is concerned mainly with the expository text that constitutes the Survey's book reports and supplements its atlases and many of its maps. Some non-Survey style guides are listed and annotated at the ends of sections on "The Human Factors" (p. 13) and "Reports Should be Intelligible" (p. 27) and in "Additional Aids for Writers" (p. 28-31).

The Survey's currently (1977) active publications series are listed below.

#### Book publications

- Professional Papers

- Bulletins

- Water-Supply Papers

- Journal of Research

- Circulars

- Nontechnical publications

- Earthquake Information Bulletins

- Water-Resources Investigations

- Water-Resources Data Reports

- Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations

- Reports available through National Technical Information Service

- United States Geological Survey Annual Report

- Open-file reports

#### Maps

- Geologic Quadrangle Maps

- Geophysical Investigations Maps

- Miscellaneous Investigations Series

- Antarctica Reconnaissance Series

- Geologic Atlas of the Moon

- Coal Investigations Maps

- Oil and Gas Investigations Maps and Charts

- Miscellaneous Field Studies Maps

- Mineral Investigations Resource Maps

- Special geologic maps (includes State and National geologic maps)

- Hydrologic Investigations Atlases
- State water-resources investigations folders
- State hydrologic unit maps
- National Topographic Maps
  - Standard series maps
    - 1:24 000-scale, 7½-minute
    - 1:62 500-scale, 15-minute
    - 1:100 000-scale
    - 1:250 000-scale
    - 1:1 000 000-scale International
  - Map of the World
- Special maps
  - National parks and monuments
  - Orthophotomaps
  - Orthophotoquads
  - County maps
  - State maps
  - National Atlas products
  - Maps of the United States

## CHOICE OF PUBLICATION FORMAT

Selection of the appropriate publication format or medium requires consideration of size and character of primary audience, of degree of permanence of the information, of size and character of illustrations, of immediacy, economics, precedent, and, perhaps of least importance, personal preferences of the author and his supervisor. Except for reports destined for scientific journals, the subject matter and size of the manuscript have less to do with the choice of publication medium than do some of the other factors listed. If a report is needed quickly by a small audience and is likely to be of ephemeral interest, it may be released in the Survey's open files or published as a Circular, rather than in one of the more formal series. As it is with book reports so it is with maps. The Geologic Quadrangle (GQ) map series has rigid restrictions as to base, scale, and size, is in color, and represents a high development of the cartographer's art. A map that is as accurate and permanent as a GQ map but that shows an area different from that of a standard quadrangle usually will appear in one of the other map series. So, too, will one that does not require color or that emphasizes only certain features, such as geochemical anomalies or hydrologic characteristics of the terrain.

Many of the factors listed above apply also to non-Survey publications. The author can determine a journal's preference as to subject matter, article size, and illustrations policy by examining recent examples of the series and by studying the journal's own statements as to policy, specifications, and hints on style. Such statements are printed periodically as front or back matter in many journals, and they can be obtained by writing to the publishers.

Most final decisions as to publication media for specific reports are made by authorities higher than the author, but he should seek advice and tentative decisions as to his probable outlet early in the manuscript-preparation process; only then can he efficiently plan and prepare the illustrations, text, and tables.

## THE SURVEY PUBLICATIONS PROCESS

The Survey publications process may be defined as the transformation of raw field, laboratory, and other research data into finished scientific reports. In general, a "Survey publication," as the term is used in this book, is a textual or cartographic report that is made available for public inspection on authority of the Director of the Survey.

When the author has submitted his finished (he thinks) manuscript to his supervisor, only the first lap of the long obstacle-filled and time-consuming process of transforming raw data into finished publication has been completed.

The report will first be reviewed for scientific validity by specialists within the originating branch and within other branches and Divisions for examination of parts related to those units' fields. The reviewers will point out any weak or doubtful spots in text and illustrations by means of marginal notes or interlineations, or (if their questions, criticisms, and suggestions are numerous or involved) by attached memorandums.

The author should give every comment thoughtful consideration. Where suggestions are acceptable he should make the appropriate changes or corrections. Where he differs with the reviewer he should indicate on the manuscript or on the margin of the attached memorandum why he differs and whether he has made any changes. If the differences of opinion are substantial or if there seem to be misunderstandings, the author may explain his views in written comments and attach them to the manuscript. Where possible, informal consultation and discussion between the reviewers and the author are highly desirable to clarify viewpoints and reach agreement.

If the report is to be open filed or is to be made available only through the National Technical Information Service, the author's labors are done once the Director has approved release; his Division's publications unit will arrange for deposition of the material and for announcement of its availability in the monthly "New Publications of the Geological Survey." Reports to be released in the more formal Professional Paper, Bulletin, Water-Supply Paper, Circular, and various map and atlas series will be sent to the Survey's Publications Division for accomplishment of publication.

In the Publications Division, the "mill" copies and the author's originals of the illustrations will be sent to the cartographic unit for preparation for printing. The manuscript will go to the editing unit for review of compliance with Survey publications style and to be marked for typesetting. After this segment of the Publications Division's processing is completed, the edited manuscript will be sent to the author for final review before typesetting.

In transmitting the edited copy for review, the Publications Division urges authors that "NOW is the time to correct existing errors. Corrections that are made later at proof stage are time consuming and expensive. In proof, changes in text will be limited almost entirely to errors of typography or fact, and changes in art will be limited to major errors of fact." And the sooner the author approves and returns the edited material to the Publications Division, the sooner the next step in the publications process, that is, the actual setting in type, can be completed.

After typesetting, the author is furnished proof of the text and illustrations, together with the original manuscript material. For suggestions on proofreading, see pages 112-115. The author-corrected proof is returned through channels to the printer, who corrects his typesetting and prints the report.

When the report has been printed and bound and is ready for distribution, the author will be furnished a limited number of copies of his book, map, or Survey research-journal article.

The Survey publications process may seem slow and ponderous, and indeed it is. The Publications Division and the operating Divisions strive constantly, but not always successfully, to reduce the time elapsed between initial submission of manuscript and release of printed report. Many factors enter this time problem, such as changes in priorities, new programs and projects, reorganizations, reassignments of responsible individuals, failures to set and enforce attainable deadlines, changes in appropriations or allotments, acceptances of resignations or retirements without cleanup of report obligations. Authors themselves often are a significant part of the reason for delayed publication. Changing intellectual interests, with consequent tendency to drop the old in favor of new pursuits, may affect progress on a report. Whatever the reason, a glance at almost any manuscript routing sheet will show that the manuscript has spent more time with the author—between technical reviews and revisions, between editing and author-approval, and between receipt of proof and completion of author proofreading—than it has in any other unit in the publications process.

The steps of the Survey publications process outlined above apply to the routine report. If a report has some special urgency, it may be given

the "rush" treatment, in the course of which some of the steps may be telescoped or otherwise varied. But the end product will be of higher quality if the author and his supervisor so plan his work that his report can be printed in the established publications process.

## THE HUMAN FACTORS

We have described the mechanics of the Survey publications process, but the process is not entirely mechanical. There are points at which human factors enter strongly, where ego meets ego. Ideally these meetings should be harmonious and mutually profitable, but the publications world is of course no more ideal than any other world, and here, as elsewhere when egos meet, bruises may occur.

The points in the Survey publications process where the most bruises occur are where author meets reviewer and where author meets editor. The meetings of no two of these egos can be the same, so no firm easement procedures can be established. Our suggestion is that all concerned should at all times and in all circumstances exhibit courtesy, goodwill, and mutual professional respect. Reviewers and editors should make their suggestions tactfully. The author should receive suggestions with an open mind, and he should remember that he is only one member of the publications group and that other members of the group also have responsibilities to the Survey and to the readers of Survey reports. The author should keep in mind, too, that he is not the owner of his report. The Survey pays his salary, furnishes him office, laboratory, library, and other facilities—and owns the results of his research.

However, such limited restrictions as the Survey publications process may impose on the author's "freedom of speech" are only for the purpose of insuring scientific validity and intelligibility, within the limits of accepted literary usage, to the audience for which the paper is written. The warm welcomes that most Survey-generated and -reviewed reports receive when submitted to non-Survey scientific publishing organizations for publication testify to the value of "the system."

## AUTHOR AND TECHNICAL REVIEWER

Aside from the writing of the manuscript, the technical (critical) review is possibly the most important step in the transformation of research results into a published report. The author is too close to his work; a fresh objective look by someone else is essential in order to spot errors in fact or reasoning, inconsistencies, or poor organization and presentation that may obscure what the author has tried to say. Even though it represents the best reasoning, exposition, and organization of

which the author is capable, every manuscript will benefit from conscientious technical review, preferably by two people—one who is thoroughly familiar with the subject matter and one who is not but who can more nearly represent the average reader.

In assigning reviewers, the supervisor should choose them carefully and should stress the importance of their jobs. They should know that, though the supervisor will rely heavily on their judgments, he will also be reviewing the quality of the reviews in the course of supervisory approval of the manuscripts. Inadequate reviews lead to problems and delays in the publications process and to publications that are disappointing to author, publisher, and reader alike. Technical review is mandatory within the Survey and in most other research organizations.

The critical technical review of the whole paper is distinct from, and commonly precedes, such specialized reviews as those for geologic maps, usage of stratigraphic and geographic names, and the like.

Most of the rest of this section is taken without much change from Cochran, Fenner, and Hill (1974) and from "Suggestions to Critics," a paper for internal Survey use which is on file in Survey libraries. "Suggestions to Critics" was written in 1949, but it contains advice to reviewers and authors which is as pertinent now as when it was written.

The main attention of the critical reviewers will be focused on the scientific content: Has the author drawn conclusions from insufficient evidence? Has he overlooked alternative hypotheses? Are the facts well documented and correct as stated? Does the paper contain digressions or discussion of controversial hypotheses that might better be excised and published elsewhere? In view of the probable audience for this particular paper, is the emphasis acceptable? Do the facts shown on the illustrations coincide with the descriptions and interpretations of them as given in the text? Are the illustrations legible, complete, and in correct form for the publication intended?

The critic will also watch for errors of omission and commission that would reflect on the author or his employer, such as: permission to use, and proper acknowledgment of, borrowed data or ideas (especially "company confidential" material); credit to collaborators; and adequacy of references cited in terms of professional ethics. The author will receive most of the praise or blame for his report, but in this he is not separable from his employer, and anything that reflects on the one also reflects on the other.

Each critic has his own methods for review of a manuscript. Nearly all experienced ones find, however, that they do their best and most helpful reviews by avoiding interruptions and staying with a manuscript until the review is completed. The thoughtful technical review is too important to the author, to the smooth forward progress of the re-

port, and to the ultimate reader to justify anything but the reviewer's undivided attention.

First, the entire paper should be inspected quickly to obtain an idea of the general form of the report, of its weak points, and of its message for the audience to whom it is addressed. On a second and more careful reading of both text and illustrations, all the items that raise questions or that need further attention should be noted. Some critics mark transpositions or write comments directly on the manuscript, but many prefer to identify questionable passages with key numbers and to build up a running list of queries, comments, and, if necessary, suggested rewrites. Illustrations should be marked lightly, if at all, and leaders should be used between map features to notes on the margin.

Another reading of manuscript and of tentative comments should result in a final list of clearly expressed suggestions, amended as necessary from the original ones. This step should be followed by an overall review of the manuscript. Its good points (which all manuscripts have) should be emphasized, but the bad and questionable qualities must also be stated forthrightly. Sarcasm and wisecracks should be avoided.

If the paper requires further review by others, as for a subject on which the critic feels incompetent, the review should so state. The review should tell the author and his supervisor, in general terms, what they need to know about the quality of the manuscript and what needs to be done to make it even better.

The critic will probably find it difficult to separate his review of the technical content of the manuscript from its presentation. Words, phrases, and paragraphs are tools for reporting to others the facts and inferences that are in the author's mind, and if the tools are dull or ill-chosen, the report will not be understood correctly by the reader; if the facts and inferences are poorly understood, no skills in presentation can hide their weaknesses.

However, adequate criticism of a manuscript is inevitably a two-sided problem: (a) examining the soundness of the data, reasoning and conclusions (technical reviewing), and (b) helping the author to transmit his ideas into the mind of the reader with a minimum of distortion (editing). The critic must use his own best judgment in treading the narrow path between technical review and editing. He should feel free to suggest any changes in organization, expression, or other facets of the presentation that might make the report more understandable and useful to the reader, but both he and the author should stand ready to defer to the editor's later suggestions on these matters.

The critic should rewrite no more than is necessary to test his interpretation of a statement in his own mind; few authors learn much from being spoon fed, even when the critic's revision results in marked improvement. If the entire paper, or significant parts of it, requires

rewriting, the critic should say so. Given specific advice as to his paper's deficiencies, the author should be able to do a better job of revision than can anyone else, and he will learn from the experience.

Authors seldom believe it until they become technical critics themselves, but the fact is that nearly all critics are people of good will, genuinely trying to help the author. Criticism is at best a thankless job, done by people who would much rather pursue original research than review manuscripts by others. Rarely, the critic may run across a gem of new thought in his own specialty; if he does, he will be grateful for the critical assignment. More often, his job will be a sterile one for him personally, done in the knowledge that his help is as likely as not to upset or antagonize the one he is trying to help.

The author, then, should approach the critics's comments on his manuscript with an open, cool mind. He must realize every comment deserves his thorough and objective consideration. Some critical comments may seem at first to be so wrong as to imply gross carelessness, if not downright stupidity, on the part of the critic. Such implications are almost certainly wrong. The author must assume that the more "stupid" a critic's comments, the more the original manuscript deserves careful restudy. Surely something in the expression, the facts presented, or the reasoning led the critic astray and caused him to make the "stupid" comment or mark. The critic has read the manuscript more carefully and with more background knowledge than will the ultimate reader; if he missed the author's point, so too will the reader of the published report.

Most differences between author and critic can be resolved by frank discussion face to face, if possible, but in writing if not. Should differences persist, it may be necessary to go to higher authority, to ask for a new review by a disinterested party, or to arrange for a joint study of the original field or laboratory evidence.

Papers by Survey authors that are submitted to outside journals for publication are commonly given an additional round of technical review by the outside organization. The journal editor usually receives many more manuscripts than he can publish, and he must choose those papers that best fit the needs of his particular audience and that fit within the policies and restrictions of his organization. To help him in his decisions, the editor may seek the advice of one or more critics who are specialists in the subject matter of a particular manuscript. The author will be well advised to accede gracefully to the journal editor's policies. If his research and conclusions are sound, they will stand up to additional technical review. And if his paper is accepted, it will probably be published promptly and will be seen by the audience most interested in it.

## AUTHOR AND EDITOR

Any publishing unit that has more than one author, one editor, and one typist must have a generally agreed-upon publications style. Many aspects of the style will be neither "right" nor "wrong"; they will just be "our style" or the "way we do it" in that unit.

Survey publications style is governed by the "U.S. Government Printing Office Style Manual," "Suggestions to Authors of the Reports of the United States Geological Survey," and such guides and technical standards as are issued by Survey administrative and operating units. STA consists, as its title says, of suggestions, as critical reviewers and editors will be aware. But the author, in turn, must be aware that reviewers and editors stand temporarily in place of the reader, and if, unlike the customer, the reader is not always right, he is still the final authority on the value of the publication. Too, the editor is the last inspector, the last possibility of saving the author and the Survey from publishing an embarrassing, overlooked error.

But editors seem to gall authors even more intensively and extensively than do critical reviewers. The editor, by existing, apparently violates the author's sense of territory. In a discussion of authorial psychology, Tichy (1966, p. 309) notes that an author's "feelings about his writing are more sensitive and tender than his feelings about his performance in his science or technology. \* \* \* An engineer will defend at length a dangling modifier or a pronoun without antecedent [as though he had been accused of having a 'personality defect'], but he will correct an error in engineering the moment it is pointed out to him." Tichy speculates that unrelated family matters, financial worries, and even marital problems may affect an author's attitude toward the editing of his work. And the editor never ceases to be dumfounded at the intensity of the author's objection to what the editor thinks of as a minor, needed correction.

The editor, then, must remember that editing is not an exact science and that it's the author's name that is going on the title page, the backstrip, and the library card. The editor himself is going to a nameless grave; his suggestions therefore should be tentative, tactful, and needed, and marked in inconspicuous pencil—never, never in red pencil or in ink.

On the other hand, skill in scientific research is not synonymous with skill in communicating the results of that research, and writing skills are acquired in the same way as other artistic skills—by long, conscientious practice. So the author might remember in humility that one dissertation does not make a writer and in charity that the editor may also have put some pride and heart's blood into his work. Author

and editor both should avoid "I" and "you" in dealing with each other; strictly impersonal courtesy should be maintained, no matter how tightly the teeth may be clinched. Thus some of the more stereotyped author-editor disagreements may be avoided:

1. "You changed my meaning!" No cliché is quite so timeworn to an editor as the pained cry of a not-too-lucid author, "You changed my meaning! Stet!!" Of all things an editor never intends to do, to change an author's meaning surely heads the list. If the meaning is ambiguous or otherwise not clear, it is part of the editor's job to try to clarify it. And if the editor guesses wrong as to the intended meaning, the author should bear in mind that the editor, poor soul, has probably read as many technical earth-science papers as any potential reader, that the reader is unlikely to be any more gifted with intuition than was the editor, and that therefore a rewording is in order, by the author if the editor's is not acceptable.

2. "A geologist [or a hydrologist, or a paleontologist] would understand." That's as may be; but even if a geologist, or a hydrologist, or a paleontologist would understand, the Survey likes its reports to have correct grammar, clear syntax, and logical organization; consistent use of technical terminology; pertinence and correct identification of tables, illustrations, and bibliographic references; coincidence of geographic locations as given in the text and as shown on the maps; correct arithmetic totals of measured stratigraphic columns; and undangled participles. So forbearance must be accorded the editor.

3. "Nitpicking." True, true. Editing consists of a myriad of trivia, or nits, very few important enough in themselves to be argued over, but editing is a critical phase of the whole process that, let us hope, in the end produces a tight, logical, cohesive, well-organized, unambiguous, well-indexed Survey report.

## REFERENCES

- Cochran, Wendell, Fenner, Peter, and Hill, Mary, eds., 1974, *Geowriting* (2d ed.): Falls Church, Va., American Geological Institute, 80 p.  
A brief, well-written guide to writing, editing, and printing of earth-science reports, by some who have been there.
- Tichy, H. J., 1966, *Effective writing for engineers, managers, scientists*: New York, John Wiley, 337 p.  
An editor with many years of experience in dealing with sensitive authorial egos writes with sympathetic insight on the successful care and feeding of them.
- U.S. Geological Survey, 1958, *Suggestions to authors of the reports of the United States Geological Survey* (5th ed.) [STA 5]: 255 p. See Wood, 1909, for earlier editions.

U.S. Government Printing Office, 1973, Style manual: Washington, 548 p.

The GPO style manual is the official guidebook for Federal editors and copy preparers in matters of capitalization, spelling, compounding, punctuation, tabulation, abbreviation, and signs and symbols. Some agencies are permitted certain variations, but Survey publications in general follow the manual closely.

Wood, G. M., Suggestions to authors \* \* \*, 1909, [STA 1] 50 p.; 1913 (2d ed.), [STA 2] 60 p.; 1916 (3d ed.), [STA 3] 120 p.; revised by B. H. Lane, 1935 (4th ed.), [STA 4] 126 p.: U.S. Geological Survey.

## OBSTRUCTIONS IN THE WRITERS PATH

Many obstructions lie in the path of the technical writer. Recognition of some of them, and of their causes and treatment, may make the path easier for the young writer, though it is seldom smooth even for experienced writers. Most of these obstructions, or roadblocks, or bugaboos, are at least partly psychological, and they are presented here with apologies to the professional psychologists.

Every writer can write more easily under some physical and psychological conditions than under others. It is important to recognize these personal idiosyncracies and to humor them as far as possible. Some physical conditions, such as office space, lighting, and room temperatures, may be beyond the writer's control. Some personal preferences, too, are obviously unattainable or so wrong that they should be avoided or changed. On the whole, however, anything that makes the writer more comfortable will also make his thoughts flow more easily from his mind to his paper.

One writer may prefer to use pencil and may even feel most comfortable with pencils of a certain hardness; another may write most easily with a pen—on yellow paper. Still another may find that his thoughts flow best directly into a typewriter, or he may prefer to prepare even his first draft by dictation to a machine or to a stenographer. Some writers find that they can revise and improve a manuscript only after it is typed; for other writers a manuscript typed is a manuscript sacredly immutable, whereas they can make changes in a penciled version without compunction.

Some writers do their best thinking, and writing, on a couch or with their feet on the desk, or perched on a drafting stool. Others are more comfortable, and more productive, seated in a certain kind of chair.

One writer may prefer to accumulate his entire manuscript in rough form before sending it to the typist; others prefer to have segments typed as they are produced and to revise and polish these segments at odd moments while other segments are being drafted.

Some people are at their best in the morning, others late in the day or even at night. But few people can produce good manuscripts for 8 hours at a time, so the writer should reserve his "best" hours for writing.

Reading, study, field notes, conferences, and the like can fill the other hours.

This listing of special preferences could be extended indefinitely, for every individual has his own. To repeat: Every writer should identify his own idiosyncracies and humor them to the extent possible.

At the outset of a writing assignment nearly every writer goes through a gestation period. Its duration commonly varies more or less directly with the size of the job ahead; it may last from a few minutes for a brief technical or administrative memorandum to several weeks or longer for a major report. This period is one of mental and physical anguish. The would-be writer welcomes interruptions and is seldom averse to interrupting the work of others. He may have strong guilt feelings that he is accomplishing nothing and is loafing on the job—and may give his colleagues the same impression. His visible productivity is almost nil.

This gestation period is a necessary preliminary to writing good reports; the mind is busy with facts, plans, dreams, and ideas. Initially these are formless, disordered, and confused, but by a combination of conscious and subconscious processes they gradually assume substance, form, and order. When these processes approach completion, the writer is ready to begin giving birth to his report.

The gestation discomfort may be alleviated to some extent: First, it should be recognized as a normal and natural process, common to all writers; thus, patience with himself (and possibly also patience on the part of an understanding supervisor) is needed. Second, the writer must convince himself that he really has something to write—that he has done the essential work and thinking in field, laboratory, and library and has information that should be given to others. Third, the writer must begin to write. Starting anywhere in the report, on the most appealing segment or not, he must put words and thoughts on paper. The first few pages may be disordered and meaningless scribbling, but soon the mind clears, and meaningful and usable sentences or even whole pages appear. At that point the gestation period is over, and the report is launched.

Even after his report is well underway and many thoughts have been transferred to paper, the writer may find that his mind has gone blank and his forward progress has ceased. This mental block, similar in many respects to the gestation period, commonly occurs at the beginning of work on a new segment of the report.

Mental blocks may simply reflect temporary fatigue from the physical aspects of writing. More often, reflection will show the writer either that he is ignorant of some of the needed facts or else that he has so many facts that they fail to mesh into a coherent whole.

Several possible remedies are available for mental blocks. One is to identify the problem, to face it squarely, and to think it out, with or without conversation or advice from colleagues. A more likely solution is a postponement of work on the blocked section. As is true of the gestation period, postponement will allow time for the subconscious to take over or for accumulation of new facts if they are needed. When the writer then returns to the problem section, the block probably will have disappeared.

Even the best of writers may turn out a report containing a segment wherein the writing seems confused. The writer himself may discover this defective segment while rereading finished parts of his manuscript. More often, it is a technical reviewer or editor who first sees evidence of confusion.

Such a confused passage in the midst of an otherwise well-written manuscript is a sure sign of confused thinking and usually represents either a subconscious coverup of ignorance of the particular subject matter or of inadequate reasoning applied to it. One remedy for a passage of confused writing is to learn enough about the subject to permit clear thinking, hence a clearer revision. Another possible remedy, and one that should be thoroughly considered, is to drop the faulty segment completely or to plan to publish it in a separate paper. Not everything on a given subject that is in a writer's head or notebook need appear in a single comprehensive report. The segment that is most difficult to write may concern data that have received inadequate thought precisely because they had little bearing on the main subject.

A final obstacle that may make a writer's path anything but smooth may be termed the "finish-line letdown." This problem affects nearly all writers. It occurs toward the end of the writing process, just as loose ends are being caught up and the final manuscript is being readied for review by supervisors and technical critics. Suddenly the writer becomes obsessed with feelings that his work is wasted and meaningless. It seems to him that either his subject is of little or no scientific importance or that he has adduced no facts or theories that are not already widely known to fellow scientists.

The remedy for the problem is to realize that it represents a normal psychological letdown that is common to all but the brashest and most self-centered of writers. Once this realization is reached, it should be easy to realize further that the original research work would not have been supported had it been worthless and that, for the time being at least, the writer probably knows more than anyone else about his subject. The obvious corollary is that it is the writer's duty, and should be his pleasure, to pass his knowledge on to others.

## OF OBLIGATIONS, DUTIES, ETHICS, AND GOOD PRACTICES

From raw data to finished report, the author is only the first among equals who contribute to the end product. Critical reviewers, editors, illustrators, cartographers, printers, and distributors play essential roles in the publications process. The fifth edition of "Suggestions to Authors" reminds authors sternly on page 1 "that the Survey has a proprietary interest in all their manuscript reports and as proprietor may dispose of the reports or require that they be changed before publication, as it sees fit." Actually this "proprietary interest" has always been exercised with the gentlest of restraints and "only to the extent of seeing that a report is scientifically and technically sound, will reach the proper audience, and will reflect credit on both the Survey and the author." But if a Survey report is not a one-man show, the author remains the star of the cast.

This author-star of the large team that is involved in adding his report to the literature of earth sciences owes to the team, to himself, and above all to the Survey the highest of ethical standards and professional practices, a few reminders of which are summarized here.

### 1. LEARN TO WRITE

As a tax-supported institution, the Survey is obligated to make the results of its research available to the public. It must therefore require publishable reports from its research staff, and a primary duty of the young research-staff member is to learn to write as well as he possibly can. To a large extent it will be up to him to be his own teacher, perhaps on his own time. The only way to learn to write well is by copious practice, and scientific research in and of itself seldom involves much practice in writing. A second-year journalism student, taking advanced reporting, feature-story writing, advertising-copy writing, and perhaps short-story writing on the side, might produce more "plain" prose, omitting "needless words," in one term than a topflight research scientist would have occasion to in a lifetime. So let us emphasize and re-emphasize: The only way to learn to write is to practice writing.

The Survey scientist who takes the trouble to train himself to write well will likely find that what is good for the Survey is also good for its scientists. A few scientists manage to achieve stature in their profession by means of the spoken word, but a surer way to recognition is by producing high-quality publications in whatever quantity the scientist can manage. This tendency in the scientific (and academic) world to equate fitness for advancement with number of published reports may be right or wrong, but it is a reality—perhaps because published reports are easily measured evidence of a scientist's productivity. Even the rare scientist who is immune to the normal needs or desires for promotion and financial advancement will find that professional recognition such as election to fellowship or high office in scientific societies is based more on his published writings than on anything else he has accomplished.

The Survey scientist is not likely to become a "great writer," if for no other reason than that he probably won't get enough practice, but he must not believe that "geologist" and "good writer" are a contradiction in terms, nor should he convince himself that writers are born, not made, and that he wasn't born a writer. Few writers are "born"; even great writers become writers the same way Paderewski became a great pianist; by practicing, and practicing, and practicing, and practicing some more; by writing, and writing, and writing, or perhaps by writing and rewriting, writing and rewriting, writing and rewriting. An eminent jurist believed there is no such thing as "good writing"; there is only good rewriting, he believed.

The only way to learn to write is to practice writing, but broad reading enriches the vocabulary as well as the mind, and occasional analytical reading may be helpful: Take a passage that seems unusually effective and try, word by word, to determine how the writer achieved such effectiveness. Or take a passage that seems unusually ineffective and try, word by word, to determine how the writer achieved such ineffectiveness. How would you have written it? Rewrite the passage a few times and compare with the original.

There are many grammars, technical manuals, style guides, glossaries, word-usage guides, dictionaries, handbooks, and other aids for the needy author. Most of these references can be helpful within the limits of their particular scope. Authors should become familiar with a wide-enough range of aids to cover their needs.

Attendance at writing classes and conferences, particularly those that include one-to-one criticism, is profitable to some would-be authors. The weakness of many such efforts is that the really qualified critic may not be able to bring himself to point out in cold blood just how

poor the student's writing is, and the student's ego might not survive such brutality if the critic could inflict it.

To repeat: The only way to learn to write is to practice writing. Writing and learning to write are lonely, one-man, often depressing and discouraging jobs, but the Survey scientist owes it to the Survey and to himself to learn to write as well as he can.

## 2. BE ACCURATE

Probably it should have been listed first, but the subject is delicate, and we tend to put off the discomfiting. However, long experience in the publishing field has shown us the need to point out that, concomitant with the scientist's obligation to write, is the obligation to write accurately. Accuracy of data is an obligation, a duty, an ethic, a good practice, and a necessity—accuracy not only of geologic, paleontologic, and other scientific data, but of simple arithmetic and geographic data. If the text mentions a site "northeast of the town of Boondocks," the location of the site on the map should not be shown as due south of Boondocks. The total of bed thicknesses shown on the bottom line of a stratigraphic column should be the total of individual bed thicknesses as machine-proved, and if the total is a rounded one that fact should be stated. It will inspire confidence and save time for reviewers and editors if machine tapes of computations accompany the manuscript.

## 3. FINISH YOUR WORK PROMPTLY

The author is obligated to complete his manuscript report, the objective of each investigation, as soon as possible after the close of the investigation. If he resigns from the Survey, he is obligated to complete and turn in his report before the effective date of his resignation. Furthermore, even though he completes his report before he leaves the Survey and thus satisfies that obligation, he may endanger his reputation and may embarrass the Survey if, in working for a private employer in the area that he knows from his Government employment, he uses unpublished information obtained during that employment. His integrity and honor as a scientist are relied upon by the Geological Survey to insure his conformance at all times to ethical personal and professional conduct in the use of information obtained through Survey investigations.

The responsibility for the prompt completion of a report is shared by the author's supervisor, who should plan clearly and concretely with the author the one or more reports that will present the results

of the investigation. This planning should be done before fieldwork or laboratory study is begun and should be adhered to as closely as possible. Such planning gives the author an understanding of his goal and his duties at all stages of his study from the beginning until the manuscript is completed. If the author is fortunate, his supervisor will not find it necessary to assign him to new duties until his project or manuscript-in-progress is complete.

When the manuscript is complete, the responsibility of getting it through the review, editing, and publication stages falls on the author's supervisor and other supervisors. They should keep the manuscript moving by avoiding unnecessary delays in the various processing channels.

#### 4. ACKNOWLEDGE EXPLICITLY ALL COOPERATION, SOURCES, AND BORROWED DATA

The nature of cooperative relationships should be stated explicitly in the introductory, or another, section of the Survey's reports. If the investigation has involved formal cooperation, a concise statement of the cooperation must also be put on the cover and on the title page of book reports and on separately published maps, charts, and atlases. In reporting on the geology or water resources of areas outside the United States, special care should be taken to avoid hurting the pride or sensitivities of coworkers and of the host country. This caution ranges from small matters such as correct use of personal titles to the larger things such as criticism of local customs and facilities. Remember, too, that mapping standards, both as to accuracy and as to appearance, differ from one country to another.

Many factual comparisons are made in reports, but these should be worded so that they do not cause offense or wrong impressions. An author who in describing the results of his investigation must relate his work to that of contemporaries or earlier workers will do well to concentrate on a clear, logical presentation of his own subject; statements about other writers and quotations from other writings should be so skillfully incorporated that they contribute to, and do not distract the reader from, the author's presentation of his subject. The author's expressed opinions, especially about writers who have published mistakes or who hold contrary views, should always be presented in a tactful and dignified manner. The young scientist who finds a mistake in his predecessor's work, particularly if the predecessor is one of the greats of the profession, may tingle with self-satisfaction, but before he gloats in print he should consider the state of knowledge and the working conditions that prevailed when the mistake was made. He may even

discover that the mistaken one was not great at all at the time but rather a youngster on the way up.

The author should obtain permission to use, and should give proper acknowledgment of, borrowed data or conclusions. He should give appropriate credit for data or conclusions contributed by collaborators. He must obtain permission of mining or other companies to publish information obtained in confidence, such as mine maps and production data; this permission should be indicated in the manuscript or in attached documents.

Company names and trade names of equipment or material should generally be avoided in Survey reports unless there are special reasons for their inclusion. This principle applies to photographs showing either the names of companies or trade names on equipment or material.

## 5. IDENTIFY AUTHORITY FOR CITED NON-SURVEY DATA

Discussions of subjects outside the primary fields of activity or competence of the Geological Survey require citation of authorities. For example, statements giving the limits of chemical constituents acceptable for public water supply should cite appropriate State standards and (or) those of the Environmental Protection Agency; statements concerning limits of such constituents in water used for irrigation should also cite an authoritative source.

## 6. MUCH MAY BE IN A NAME

An author should decide early in his writing career the form in which he wants his name to appear on his reports; confusion will be avoided if the form is not changed. Use of his first name and middle initial is preferable. Where name similarities occur, a distinctive combination of names or initials should be used. Except where similarities are involved, Survey bibliographic citations commonly give only the initials unless there is only one given name; a single given name is spelled out. (See also discussion of name forms on p. 76).

Women scientists, who may change their names by marriage, should consider the desirability of retaining one name for professional purposes throughout their careers. A change to a husband's surname not only brings grief to bibliographers and librarians, but may dilute the effect of the scientist's life work on the science and on her own stature in the profession.

## REFERENCE

U.S. Geological Survey, 1958, Suggestions to authors of the reports of the United States Geological Survey (5th ed.): 255 p.

## REPORTS SHOULD BE INTELLIGIBLE

Scientific thought is exact and direct, and scientific writing must therefore be accurate and to the point. \* \* \* [Any] writer's first duty is to be intelligible. \* \* \* [Plain] writing is not something beneath the plane of endeavor of the scientific investigator \* \* \*. It is our ambition that the reports of the Geological Survey shall be written in the language of the people.

—George Otis Smith (1915, p. 630-632)

In 1973, Survey Director V. E. McKelvey said:

[Policies, plans, and decisions concerning] resource adequacy, strip-mining, land use \* \* \*, powerplant siting, preservation of coastal wetlands, wilderness area withdrawals, offshore drilling, \* \* \* surface and subsurface waste disposal, air pollution and [other problems] that are central issues in the United States today are \* \* \* made by legislators, social scientists, lawyers, and others who understand and represent people, but who do not understand [scientific] language. [The information required to solve these problems needs] to be in plain terms and in forms in which it can be used effectively \* \* \*.

In our efforts to increase the use of resource and land information in planning and decision-making, we have found that one of the most difficult problems is how to bridge the information gap between scientists and nonscientists \* \* \*. The earth scientists, on the one hand, and the planning and urban decision-making community on the other, despite the best efforts of both, have been unable to totally bridge the gap between them.

Every edition of "Suggestions to Authors" has stressed the need for intelligibility. "The author should express his meaning concisely and avoid unnecessary repetition," wrote George McLane Wood in STA 1 (1909, p. 7). The compilers of the fifth edition (1958) put the same idea on page 1: "To insure effectiveness, reports must be not only accurate but so clearly and simply written that they are easy to read and understand." We might revise this advice to add the phrase "by the audience to which they are directed." The effective speaker or writer must have clearly in mind the message he has to give and the audience to which his message is directed. Reports of Survey research in the more esoteric aspects of earth sciences that have developed in the last few decades perhaps cannot be "written in the language of the people." Consequently, in this sixth edition of "Suggestions to Authors," detailed suggestions for these highly specialized reports are left to the appropriate operating units. The suggestions herein are pointed toward general applicability, for no matter how esoteric the message, the purpose of writing today is the same as it was when hieroglyphics were scratched on clay tablets: to tell somebody something, to report data accurately,

to present information intelligibly for contemporary and future readers. And employees of tax-supported organizations may be reminded that it's no disgrace to be intelligible to the taxpayer.

### "OMIT NEEDLESS WORDS!"

—Strunk and White (1972, p. IX, 17)

Certainly it is excellent discipline for an author to feel that he must say all that he has to say in the fewest possible words, or his reader will be sure to skip them; and in the plainest possible words, or his reader will certainly misunderstand them. Generally, also, a downright fact may be told in a plain way; and we want downright facts at present more than anything else.

—John Ruskin, as quoted in first edition of "Suggestions to Authors" (Wood, 1909, p. 37)

In general, the shorter and more concise a scientific report, the better. A lean, concise report will be published faster and more cheaply than a long, rambling one, and it will be read and understood by more readers than would a longer one that has the same message.

An adequate brief manuscript will almost certainly require more of an author's time, energy, and skill than will production of a fat-filled mass of prose and statistics. The old joke that runs "Please forgive this long letter; had I more time it would be shorter" carries a lesson for all of us.

The art and skill of writing concisely demands abundant patience and some basic knowledge of writing. Because the abstract represents the ultimate desirable condensation of most reports, perhaps abstract preparation is as good a place as any to learn the art. The well-written abstract tells in as few words as possible all the essential facts or inferences that are presented more elaborately in the report itself. Writing several abstracts of the same manuscript, each one shorter than the last, is excellent practice for an author in learning to say "all he has to say in the fewest possible words." The necessity of writing an abstract in a set number of words also inhibits verbosity. Given rigid limitations, verbiage can be slashed without loss of message.

After the author has completed his manuscript, he should, if possible, let it cool for a while. Then, before he sends it to technical review, he will do well to go over it to dispense with unnecessary words, phrases, sentences, and paragraphs. Tichy (1966, p. 8–15) advises writers that there are four steps to authorship: planning, writing, cooling, and revising; she gives suggestions for the first, second, third, fourth, and fifth revisions!

Significant shortening ("condensation,") may be demanded by a space-conscious supervisor or journal editor, or one of them may under-

take the shortening. If the author himself condenses before he sends the manuscript forward, the process will probably be less painful and also more conducive to speedy publication.

### “AVOID GOBBLEDYGOOK!”

—Bishop, Eckel, and others, (1977, p. 25)

William Strunk, Jr. of Cornell University commanded his students to “Omit needless words! Omit needless words! Omit needless words!” (Strunk and White, 1959, p. 17). Strunk taught before the word “gobbledygook” was coined, else he must certainly have also commanded “Avoid gobbledygook! Avoid gobbledygook! Avoid gobbledygook!”

“Webster’s Third New International Dictionary of the English Language” (WNI 3) defines “gobbledygook” as “inflated, involved, and obscure verbiage, usually associated with bureaucratic pronouncements.” Gobbledygook evidently has survival value: It flourishes, and not only among administrative bureaucrats:

“The Big Trouble with Scientific Writing \* \* \*. When I see articles, as I frequently do these days, exhorting authors to greater simplicity and clarity, I think of the first little scientific note I wrote, when I was an idealistic graduate student. I wrote it as simply and directly as I could. It began, “The big trouble with diffusion cloud chambers is low radiation resistance,” and it went on in the same vein. My coworkers thought it needed a little more work. Secretly I did not agree, so I decided to attempt to make it into a parody of scientific writing. I borrowed impressive but empty phrases from “The Review of Scientific Instruments.” Each sentence and each idea was made unnecessarily complicated, without being too obvious about it. The result began, “The principal difficulty encountered in the operation of an ordinary high-pressure hydrogen cloud chamber is inferior radiation resistance.” I failed in my attempt, for now everyone thought it read fine, and it appeared in its complicated form in “The Review.”

My point is not that scientific writing cannot be parodied, but rather that scientific writing is the way it is because its readers actually prefer it that way. People’s actions do not always correspond to their words. Everyone is against sin and bad writing, unless given a free choice. (Letter to editor, “Science,” Sept. 22, 1967, p. 1374–5, from Robert H. Good, Department of Physics, California State College, Hayward 94542.)

We have said that reports of specialized aspects of the earth sciences perhaps cannot be written in the “language of the people,” but there should be no place in any type of Survey writing for what is commonly spoken of as “gobbledygook.” Scientific gobbledygook is no less gobbledygook for being scientific. (Throughout STA 6, examples of poor usage are given on the left, correct or better usage on the right. Examples given only to illustrate a point run across the page.)

The distribution and physical relationships of the XYZ Formation relative to subjacent rocks suggest that it was deposited in a restricted area over which a particular set of paleogeographic and tectonic conditions existed. The occurrences of quartz sandstone of age and physical attributes similar to those of the XYZ Formation at certain places to the south and southwest of North Valley, however, indicate that such conditions obtained locally elsewhere in western Nevada.

A general loss of strength enabled the sediments to undergo flowlike displacement in a downslope direction.

The foundation materials underwent a kind of flowage in which there was rearrangement of the materials at the intergranular level.

The daily march of photosynthesis differs from the daily march of insolation by being relatively lower in the afternoon hours.

The upward component of movement was distributed throughout the sediments.

On the basis of this theory, displacements on the thrust faults are of the order of a few miles such that blocks of the ABC Formation have not been moved far from the original sites of deposition of the sediments.

It is unlikely that the PQR Formation is absent above Unit II due to less probability for preservation there than over Units I and III, because the deformation of rocks in Unit II is less than in Units I and III and because of the overriding of Unit II by Units I and III. The evidence suggests that the PQR Formation was not deposited on Unit II.

One of the most interesting cases illustrated an instance of what seemed to be a puzzling case of vertical bedding.

More detailed discussions of "inflated, involved, and obscure verbiage" and how to avoid it are given in the two volumes of "Effective Revenue Writing" of the Internal Revenue Service (IRS 1 [1961]; IRS 2 [1962]), O'Hayre [1966?], and Bell Telephone Laboratories (1967, p. 8-9).

(Does author mean: South and southwest of North Valley, the occurrence of sandstone similar to the XYZ Formation indicates that geographic and tectonic conditions similar to those of the depositional area of the XYZ existed locally elsewhere in western Nevada.)

Loss of strength caused the sediments to flow downslope.

The grains of the foundation materials were rearranged by a flowlike movement.

Photosynthesis differs from insolation by decreasing in the afternoon.

The sediments moved upward.

(Does author mean: According to this theory, thrust faulting has moved blocks of the ABC Formation no more than a few miles from the original sites of deposition of the sediments.)

(Does the author mean: The facts (a) that Unit II is less deformed than Units I and III and (b) that it is overridden by them suggest that the PQR Formation was not deposited on Unit II.)

(Does the author mean: A puzzling feature of the deposit was the apparent vertical bedding at one place.)

## REFERENCES

Bell Telephone Laboratories, 1967, Editorial style guide (2d ed.): Whippany, N.J., Editing-Production Group, 108 p.

The Bell Laboratories guide was prepared for internal use. It is written in the "underlying belief \* \* \* that technical manuscripts need not be dull, uninspired, jargon-ridden tracts inherently to be deprived of the refinements of the English language. On the contrary, technical literature can make as effective use of the splendid flexibility and variety of English as can any other discipline" (p. iii).

McKelvey, V. E., 1973, Wanted: Usable, credible information—plain if not simple: Address to Geological Society of America, Southeastern Section, Knoxville, Tenn., April 12, 1973.

O'Hayre, John, [1966?], Gobbledygook has gotta go: U.S. Bureau of Land Management, 113 p.

A light-hearted malediction on governmental obfuscation.

Smith, G. O., 1915, Plain writing: Science, new ser., v. 42, p. 630-632.

A slightly modified version of this paper, retitled "Plain Geology," was published in 1974 by the U.S. Geological Survey in its pamphlet series.

Strunk, William, Jr., revised by E. B. White, 1972, The elements of style (2d ed.): New York, Macmillan, 78 p.

Strunk and White (p. viii) attempt to give in a stringently brief space and manner "the principal requirements of plain English style." The "requirements" are somewhat subjective, but if Mr. Strunk had been able to enforce universally his command to "Omit needless words," carloads of paper and acres of forest would be saved daily.

Tichy, H. J., 1966, Effective writing for engineers, managers, scientists: New York, John Wiley, 337 p.

U.S. Geological Survey, 1958. Suggestions to authors of the reports of the United States Geological Survey (5th ed.): 255 p.

U.S. Treasury Department Internal Revenue Service [1961], Effective Revenue writing 1: 261 p.; [1962], Effective Revenue writing 2: 198 p.

The complementary texts of the Internal Revenue Service training course in the elements of good writing are two of many government manuals and guides to written communication. IRS 1 is "a basic course designed to give a brief, practical review of writing principles, grammar, and punctuation (title page)." IRS 2 is a highly literate and readable work written by Calvin D. Linton, former Dean of Columbian College of George Washington University. Mr. Linton took as his thesis the fact that "writing skill is quite independent of areas of special knowledge" (p. 10). Superior knowledge of a subject, he held, does not of itself mean greater writing skill.

## AIDS FOR WRITERS

The author ambitious to become a proficient technical writer should become familiar with more than one dictionary and more than one authority on style and grammar, both to reinforce his own self confidence and to understand that, on some points, language and editorial authorities may differ as diametrically as do earth-science authorities. A few such aids that the authors of STA 6 have found helpful have been cited (p. 13); some others are listed below. The lists are neither comprehensive nor exhaustive. Any technical library will have many more, and perhaps even more helpful, similar publications.

### DICTIONARIES

An unabridged dictionary is always a writer's first aid. The serious writer must have access to one, and preferably to more than one. The "Oxford English Dictionary" (1933; Oxford University Press, 13 v.) is the most exhaustive study of the English vocabulary ever published, but it is too exhaustive and too massive to be a practical aid to the average author. The Merriam-Websters (WNI 2, 1934; WNI 3, 1961), Funk and Wagnalls (1959), and Random House (1966) unabridgeds are of more manageable size and scope.

The GPO style manual (1973, p. 61) specifies "Webster's Third New International Dictionary" as the official guide for spelling in government publications unless otherwise indicated in the manual. As Bell Laboratories (1967, p. IX) notes, "The third edition contains much up-to-date information but, unlike the second, does not draw distinctions between the acceptable and the current. As a consequence, the reader seeking answers to questions on preferred usages will find the second edition more helpful."

The second edition of Merriam-Webster (WNI 2) is out of print, but many offices have foresightedly saved their old seconds while providing their workers with new thirds; fortunate the writer who has access to both the old and the new unabridged Websters. WNI 2 includes an informative "History of the English Language" (p. lxxxii-xc). WNI 3 has a discussion of all currently used punctuation marks (p. 48a-51a)

and also gives detailed spelling rules that include construction of plurals and word compounding (p. 23a-28a). Not all the spelling and compounding rules of WNI 3 agree with GPO style-manual preferences.

The Random House unabridged contains lists of common French, Spanish, Italian, and German words and their English equivalents and also a 64-page multicolored atlas of the world.

"The American Heritage Dictionary of the English Language" (William Morris, ed., 1969, New York, Houghton Mifflin, 1,550 p.) is not unabridged, but its scope is wide and its material is readable and informative. For writers who feel more comfortable with an authoritarian dictionary to lean on, American Heritage tries (p. vi) to "add the essential dimension of guidance, that sensible guidance toward grace and precision which intelligent people seek in a dictionary."

"The vocabulary recorded here, ranging from the language of Shakespeare to the idiom of the present day, is that of the educated adult," according to Heritage's editor (p. vii). Some of the dictionary's definitions include brief "usage" discussions obtained by the novel method of "careful tabulation and analysis" of questionnaire-replies from "a panel of 100 outstanding speakers and writers \* \* \*. As a consequence, this Dictionary \* \* \* [offers] the reader the lexical opinions of a large group of highly sophisticated fellow citizens" (p. vii).

After the unabridged dictionary, the next most useful reference may be a thesaurus (from the Latin for "storehouse" or "treasury"). Several modern versions of Peter Mark Roget's thesaurus, first published in 1852, are on the market. Thomas Y. Crowell Co.'s third edition was published in New York in 1962 (1,258 p.); St. Martin's Press, New York, published "The Original Roget's Thesaurus of English Words and Phrases" in 1965 (1,405 p.).

A thesaurus is a great help in running down a word that the writer is groping for but can't quite remember. It is also a help in avoiding undesirable word repetition, though it is not a dictionary of synonyms; it is rather a listing of all conceivable substitutes for given words, many of which may not be acceptable or applicable. A thesaurus should be used in conjunction with an unabridged dictionary or with an aid such as "Webster's New Dictionary of Synonyms" (1968, Springfield, Mass., Merriam, 909 p.), which is "a dictionary of discriminated synonyms with antonyms and analogous and contrasted words" (title page).

## WORD GUIDES

Most writers sooner or later become attached to a favorite word guide which, as time goes on, becomes more and more infallible to them. These guides all contain helpful and interesting information about

English words. Most of them also contain some of their writers' personal preferences and prejudices concerning certain words. The Survey writer should not become too dependent on any one guide.

Evans, Bergen, and Evans, Cornelia, 1957, *A dictionary of contemporary American usage*: New York, Random House, 567 p.

The Evans volume contains much detailed discussion of troublesome words, phrases, and grammatical usages. Some of the opinions expressed are advanced and permissive and are not accepted by other authorities; see for instance, the discussion of participles (p. 353-355).

Follett, Wilson, 1966, *Modern American usage*: New York, Hill and Wang, 436 p.

An erudite and readable compilation of fine points and fine distinctions of American-English usage. Follett is not permissive and he does not hesitate to express disapproval of what he considers undesirable usage, but neither does he command the tide to stand still; rather he advises those who dislike salt water to quietly avoid the seashore (p. 105): "Persons old enough to have been repelled by the verb 'contact' when it was still a crude neologism may as well make up their minds that there is no way to arrest or reverse the tide of its popularity. \* \* \* [But the conservative does retain] one advantage: no one insists that he must use 'contact,' and if he sticks to 'consult' and other inconspicuous synonyms no one will even notice his abstention."

The book contains detailed and useful discussions of "adverbs, vexatious" and of punctuation; however, the 22 pages on usage of "shall (should), will (would)" need not unduly concern Survey authors.

Fowler, H. W., revised by Ernest Gowers, 1965, *A dictionary of modern English usage* (2d ed.): London, Oxford University Press, 725 p.

"Fowler," first published in 1925, has been cherished by generations of Survey authors and editors. Never mind that its diagonals and ampersands were confusingly numerous, that its syntax was obfuscatory, and that many of its dictums were arbitrary and personal; it was accepted as authoritative. "Fowler says \* \* \*" was enough to settle any argument about word usage. The Gowers revision is perhaps less flavorful, but its syntax is less ponderous, its style is more graceful, and its opinions are less didactic.

Funk & Wagnalls Editorial Staff, 1953, *Standard handbook of prepositions, conjunctions, relative pronouns, and adverbs*: New York, Funk & Wagnalls, 116 p.

Sentence clarity depends on careful choice of connectives (conjunctions, conjunctive adverbs, relative pronouns, and prepositions). This handbook gives the derivation and usage of English connectives. It includes an extensive list of phrasal prepositions and an alphabetical list of more than 2,000 prepositional idioms, each illustrated as to sentence usage.

## GRAMMAR AND STYLE GUIDES

Flesch, Rudolph, 1946, *The art of plain talk*: New York, Harper, 210 p.

Proposes a system of "readability tests."

Kierzek, J. M., and Gibson, Walker, 1965, *The Macmillan handbook of English* (5th ed.): New York, Macmillan, 493 p.

The Macmillan handbook is aimed at comprehensive coverage of English problems of college freshmen: parts of speech, parts of the sentence, punctuation, spelling, sentence and paragraph structure, how to use the library, how to compile a bibliography, how to write a research paper. It is an excellent reference and review for writers whose freshman courses are some years behind them.

National Academy of Sciences, 1971, *A guide for preparing manuscripts*: Washington, D.C., 60 p.

"This handbook was prepared in response to continuing requests for a guide to serve the many persons involved in the preparation of manuscripts for publication by the National Academy of Sciences, the National Academy of Engineering, and the National Research Council" (quoted from "Acknowledgments," unpagcd).

Skillin, M. E., Gay, R. M., and others, 1974, *Words into type* (3d ed.): Englewood Cliffs, N.J., Prentice-Hall, 585 p.

A voluminously detailed, comprehensive guide for editors that literally begins with the typing of the manuscript and follows through to selection of type for the printed publication. Includes advice on abbreviations, capitalization, punctuation (22 pages of discussion and examples of proper use of commas!), grammar, the right preposition, trite expressions, wordiness, and typography and illustrations. The book is written as instructions for editors, but author-readers will find much useful information, and novice author-readers particularly can acquire some comprehension of the multifaceted editorial and compositional processes by which their manuscript words are transformed into printed pages.

University of Chicago Press, 1969, *A manual of style* (12th ed., revised): Chicago, 546 p.

The venerable and widely respected Chicago "Manual of Style" was revised in its 12th edition "to stress fundamentals that in the past may have been taken for granted, to illustrate every principle enunciated as fully as possible, and in all instances to advocate the simple and economical in place of the elaborate and expensive" (p. vii). The manual is more concerned with humanistic than with scientific technical style, but it has a wealth of detailed recommendations on reference lists and citations, capitalization, indexing, construction of tables, and other authorial and editorial matters that are of common concern throughout the publishing industry. Some of the recommendations of the Chicago manual differ from Survey style, but the authors of the manual make clear that their directions and recommendations are not necessarily the only or even the best ways; they are simply the preferences of the University of Chicago Press.

## MISCELLANEOUS

Bartlett, John, 1968, *Familiar quotations* (14th ed.): Boston, Little, Brown, 1,750 p.

The writer thinking of embellishing his heavy scientific data with a pertinent literary quotation should always check that his quotation is exact, else he and the Survey will get embarrassing letters pointing out his inexactitude.

## PLANNING AND STARTING THE REPORT

Notes on original field or laboratory observations should be sufficiently explicit and neat that they are meaningful both to the author, who may not transform them into a final report for months or years, and also, if necessary, to someone who took no part in the project. A few greats of geology have been known to prepare their field notes and sketches so meticulously that substantial parts could be transformed directly into final manuscript. A little time spent in the Field Records Center of the Survey Library at Denver consulting the field notes of F. L. Ransome and G. K. Gilbert, for example, would be a rewarding experience for the aspiring young writer of geological reports.

Ideally, notes should record not only observations but also the notetaker's preliminary impressions, tentative generalizations, and even incipient theories and hypotheses. Most thoughts of this nature will change radically as additional observations are amassed, but all will serve as stimuli and guides for further thought.

Plans for the project report should be formulated, in writing, by the researcher in consultation with his supervisor (and with his coworkers, if any) at the outset of the project. Such plans will change as the work progresses, but a vision of the form in which the project results are expected to be reported will save time, effort, and expense and may avoid acute disappointment. Authors have been known to submit a full-sized book-type report when only a geologic map with brief text or a short paper for journal publication was the desired product.

These early plans should include an estimate of the time needed to complete the report: Make the most realistic estimate possible, then double it; use the result as the minimum time needed for the job. This pessimistic estimate will be a movable, and probably receding, target, but it will be part of the time and cost guides that both author and supervisor need for management.

### THE FIRST STEP

The generally recommended first step in the actual compilation of the report is to make a preliminary outline, which will be a help in organizing thought and in identifying gaps in data and, as it evolves,

will serve as a measuring stick of progress on the project. This original outline will probably consist of the headings of the main units of the report. As work progresses, the outline can be refined and fleshed out with headings of the subunits.

The preliminary-outline procedure is useful to the fortunate majority of writers who have orderly, logical minds that have no difficulty in starting with step 1 and going to step 2 and thence in sequence to the end of the way; but it is not for all authors. For the less orderly minded author who may be able to formulate no more than a disordered mental list of the topic he intends to cover, we repeat our earlier advice: Work and write as you work and write best; start with whatever point seems easiest to put on paper. But start. Tichy (1966, p. 17-63) has some pungent and pertinent comments on "Getting Started"; she lists "Two Dozen Ways to Begin." But as the only way to write is to write, the only effective way to start is to start. Just be sure that the final product is outlineable, that the table of contents, drawn up from the unit headings and subheadings, will fall into a rational order.

The writer who can prepare a preliminary outline for his report will probably also be able, and will find it helpful, to prepare a preliminary abstract. This abstract, like the outline, will bear little resemblance to the final product, but the labor of boiling his findings down to a few hundred words will force the author to view all his research in perspective and to begin to differentiate between the important and the trivial. He will thus provide himself with guidance on proper relative emphasis in the different facets of the writing job ahead.

Another step the prospective author should take early is to plan for access to needed references, glossaries, gazetteers, and the like. Some he may own; many others will be in libraries. If particular references are not in Survey libraries, the library may arrange to borrow them from other libraries or may purchase them for the Survey collection. A few commonly used references are listed at the end of this section; others are listed at the ends of sections pertaining to various special subjects.

## PARALLEL CHORES

Illustrations and text are so closely interdependent that tentative plans for illustrations, like plans for the text, should begin at the beginning of a research project, and preparation of the illustrations should proceed in parallel with that of the text. Much of the text indeed will consist of descriptions or interpretations of what the illustrations show. Too, many ideas come to an author, or begin to crystallize, while he is collecting specimens, drawing his maps or sketches, studying and

refining his rough drafts of illustrations, or analyzing laboratory reports.

A list of all those who have contributed to the author's work should be maintained from the beginning of the research. Many of the names will be omitted from the final acknowledgments, but without a running list the author can easily forget some of the people to whom he is indebted.

It is the author's responsibility to secure the permission of the owner of any copyrighted material that is to be quoted in the report. Such permission is usually given freely for use in scientific publications, though some publishers require specific forms of acknowledgment. Copies of the copyright permissions must be forwarded with the manuscript when it is submitted for the Director's approval for publication. Federal Government publications are not copyrighted, nor may a journal or other outside publisher claim copyright on material written by a government employee as part of his official work. Thus, Survey publications are, in effect, in the public domain and may be reproduced by anyone who wishes to do so. However, the Survey and also individual Survey authors sometimes receive requests for permission to republish part or all of a Survey-generated paper. Such requests are of course always acknowledged and granted, but it is customary to ask that the Survey be mentioned as the source of any quotation or information.

Geologic names (except astrogeologic names) used in Survey reports are routinely reviewed by the Survey's Geologic Names Committee, but if the writer plans to introduce new geologic names or to alter existing ones, he is well-advised to reserve his proposed nomenclature with the Committee as early in the report preparation as possible (see p. 132, 133, 134). In addition to checking usage by Survey authors, the Committee, if requested, also checks usages and reserves new names for non-Survey authors.

The U.S. Board of Geographic Names is the final authority on place-name usage in all official U.S. Government publications. It passes on all proposals for new geographic names and for changes in existing names for geographic features. If the author plans to introduce new geographic names or to make name changes, he should request Board approval early in the report-preparation process (see p. 160).

Use of proposed new mineral names also must be approved in advance of publication. This authority rests with the Commission on New Minerals and Mineral Names, International Mineralogical Association. The author may forward his request for approval through his organizational channels or he may write directly to the Commission, whose current address (chairman and secretaries change!) will be obtainable from the Mineralogical Society of America, 1909 K Street, NW., Washington, D.C. 20036.

A card-record bibliography of all the literature cited and consulted during the research and writing stages of a project will be most valuable. If each reference is entered on a separate card, in proper bibliographic format and with annotations, compilation of a final bibliography will be routine, as will standardization of citations throughout the text. Last-minute corrections and fill-ins of missing references will be eliminated. It is also well to maintain running lists of tables, illustrations, and other additions to the text matter as these planned or prepared. Deletion of unused or abandoned items is much easier than derivation of a new list as the report approaches completion.

Disposal of the field, library, and laboratory notes, the maps, photographs, specimens, thin and polished sections, and the correspondence must be made at some point after publication of a report. Procedures for disposal of these raw materials vary widely among Survey branches and Divisions, and ultimate disposal will depend to some extent on the author's future work. The better the labeling, indexing, and arrangement of the materials, the easier will be the writer's job in reusing them and the more useful will they be to other users of the archives.

## REFERENCE

Tichy, H. J., 1966, *Effective writing for engineers, managers, scientists*: New York, John Wiley, 337 p.

## ADDITIONAL AIDS

Baker, B. B., Jr., and others, eds., 1966, *Glossary of oceanographic terms*: U.S. Naval Oceanographic Office Special Publication 35, 204 p.

Gary, Margaret, McAfee, Robert, Jr., and Wolf, C. L., eds., 1972, *Glossary of geology*: Washington, American Geological Institute, 805 p.

Most voluminous work of its type available. Contains definitions of about 33,000 earth-science terms and a long (52 pages) bibliography of sources, though does not identify definitions with sources. Gives synonyms with each definition.

Lapedes, D. N., ed., 1974, *McGraw-Hill dictionary of scientific and technical terms*: New York, McGraw-Hill, 1,634 p. and appendix.

Lists and defines almost 100,000 scientific and technical terms. Appendix contains tables of metric conversions, mathematical signs and symbols, and international graphic symbols.

Runcorn, S. K., and others, eds., 1967, *International dictionary of geophysics \* \* \**: Oxford, Pergamon Press, 2 v., 1728 p. (paged continuously).

"International dictionary of geophysics, seismology, geomagnetism, aeronomy, oceanography, geodesy, gravity, marine geophysics, meteorology, the Earth as a planet and its evolution" (title page).

Seltzer, L. E., ed., 1962, *The Columbia Lippincott gazetteer of the world*: New York, Columbia University Press, 2,148 p. and supplement.

"The spelling of geographic names must conform to the decisions of the U.S. Board on Geographic Names. In the absence of such a decision, the U.S. Directory of Post Offices is to be used for names of post office in the United States and its possessions, and the Columbia Lippincott Gazetteer of the World is to be followed in the spelling of other names" (GPO style manual, 1973, p. 70).

Thrush, Paul W., and the Staff of the Bureau of Mines, eds., 1968, *A dictionary of mining, mineral, and related terms*: Washington, U.S. Government Printing Office, 1,269 p.

This volume, which contains definitions of about 55,000 terms related to mining and the mineral industries, is a revision of "Fay's glossary," first published in 1918 as Bureau of Mines Bulletin 95, "A Glossary of the Mining and Mineral Industry." The editors have followed the pattern established in Bulletin 95 of defining terms by quoting from identified sources.

The U.S. Postal Service annually publishes a "Directory of Post Offices", which includes zip codes. The National Railway Publishing Co. of New York publishes official railway guides bimonthly; certain editions include all North American freight stops.

## THE PARTS OF THE REPORT

### TITLE PAGE

The title page of a Survey book report carries the title, name of author or authors, statement of cooperation if applicable, and a brief statement characterizing the report. The title and authorship are also typed on the first page of text above the abstract, about 2 inches from the top of the manuscript page to allow space for directions to the printer and for volume title if needed.

#### *Title*

The title should be as brief as it can be made, consistent with clarity; it should not serve as a summary of the report. Long, long titles do not necessarily mean deep, deep study—and usually they are not quoted in entirety. But use of several unit modifiers or of a pyramid of prefixes in an attempt to shorten the title should be avoided. The title “Neogene Geochronobioclimatopaleomagnetostatigraphy: A Mediterranean Synthesis,” for example, contains only five words, but some readers may think it a bit overdone for a 250-word abstract.

Most Survey authors avoid beginning their titles with such words as “The,” “A,” “Notes on,” and “On.” These words sometimes can be used effectively to begin text headings, but in a book title a more significant word is usually preferable.

The titles of many Survey reports are of certain types, as:

Stratigraphy of Paleozoic Rocks in the Carlin-Pinon Range Area, Nevada  
Mineral Resources of the San Pedro Parks Wilderness and Vicinity, Rio  
Arriba and Sandoval Counties, New Mexico  
Surface Water Supply of the United States, 1966-70, Part 4, St. Lawrence  
River Basin  
Geology of the Sage and Kemmerer 15-minute Quadrangle, Lincoln County,  
Wyoming  
Floods of September-October 1967 in South Texas and Northeastern Mexico  
Ground Water in the Corvallis-Albany Area, Central Willamette Valley,  
Oregon

For many reports, however, there are no such guidelines, and the author must devise a satisfactory title.

## Authorship

Assignment of authorship responsibilities is an extension of the divisions of responsibility that have characterized the research project from its inception. Final decisions on this sensitive matter will be made by the project chief or his supervisor on the basis of evaluations of the relative contributions of collaborators and on their ability to deliver assigned segments of the joint manuscript. For any research project that involves more than one scientist, however, it is most desirable that each worker have a clear understanding at the outset of the project as to exactly what part of the research is his responsibility and what part of the final report he is to prepare.

The person or persons who had immediate and active charge of the investigation or who prepared the report or map will naturally be named as the author or among the authors of the report. Other co-authorship is restricted normally to those who contributed very substantially to the conduct and results of the investigation. Usually those individuals in more general administrative or supervisory control over the investigation or those who, as members of the party or group carrying out the investigation, performed only routine technical assistance, are not included as coauthors.

Seniority, grade, and like distinctions should not be the primary criteria in deciding on authorship or coauthorship nor on whether a contributor should be listed on the title page, in the section on acknowledgements, or in a table that records laboratory results. Instead, the degrees of credit should be based on degrees of responsibility for the finished product and for the work and thought that went into it. Contributions of laboratory assistants and other support personnel are more commonly credited in text or tables, but if the assistant has played a large role in a research investigation there is no reason why he should not be listed as coauthor or, more rarely, even as senior author.

In Survey reports, there is seldom justification for naming more than four principal authors for a single report. However, in a single report covering principal or major work by one or more named authors, a supplemental or subordinate contribution on a related phase may be credited by adding to the main title and authorship the words "With a section on (subject), by (author)." The form "by A, B, C, and others" is sometimes used.

The author of each single titled report will be named regardless of whether the report is published as a complete numbered publication or as one of several chapters published under a more general title indicating topical or geographic relationship.

The listing of multiple authors for a single report causes problems for supervisors, editors, librarians, bibliographers, and even promotion boards. But in an age of increasing specialization and of multidisciplinary group efforts, many reports are prepared through the joint efforts of several authors, and those who have performed a particular segment of a joint research effort should have the responsibility and get the credit for writing up the results. The problem may be greatly reduced by skillful, generous use of the section on acknowledgments. The listing of six or seven authors for a six- or seven-page report may seem a little ridiculous to the reader, and it seems even more ridiculous in a 200-word-limit abstract journal.

### *Statement of cooperation*

If the project was undertaken in cooperation with other Federal agencies or with State or other governmental agencies, the cooperation is expressed by statements on separately published maps and on the title pages and the covers of book reports. Some examples from recent Survey reports and maps are:

- Prepared on behalf of the National Aeronautics and Space Administration
- Prepared in cooperation with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Mobile District
- Prepared in cooperation with the Colorado Department of Natural Resources
- Prepared in cooperation with the States of Illinois, Indiana, Kentucky, and Tennessee, and with other agencies

If the sponsor or cooperating organization desires some other form of acknowledgment, its wishes should be followed. The author is responsible for ascertaining the exact title of the cooperating agency for such statements of cooperation.

### *Descriptive statement*

A brief statement characterizing the report should be placed on the title page of the manuscript when it goes forward for final review and approval. Examples of these descriptive statements from recent Survey reports are:

- A study of the distribution of elements in two Continental Shelf environments of different depositional character
- The Figuera Lava and the overlying Fajardo Formation are redescribed and assigned to the Lower Cretaceous Series.
- A history of land subsidence caused by water-level decline in the San Joaquin Valley from the 1920's to 1972
- A stratigraphic-paleontologic study of rugose corals as aids in age determination of Great Basin Devonian rocks

## FRONT MATTER

*Foreword and preface*

The foreword is a statement concerning the report by someone other than the author; the preface is a statement by the author himself. Both precede the table of contents, the preface after the foreword if a report has both. Most Survey publications have little need for either a foreword or a preface. Care in preparing the introductory material generally will eliminate the need for a preface, and few reports need any comment other than the author's text. However, there are circumstances in which prefatory statements are appropriate: (a) A publication may be unusually important, (b) it may consist of a collection of papers, each having its own author and title but pertaining to a central theme reflected in the title of the volume, or (c) it may be the report of a cooperative investigation by the Survey and another governmental agency. Such publications may benefit by a foreword, written and signed by an administrative official, in which the importance and circumstances of the investigation are described.

A preface can be used to provide a prominent place for bibliographic information, such as the relation to other editions of the same report and to other reports on the same subject, and also for certain kinds of credits and acknowledgments that are not included on the title page. In organization-type reports, for example those on surface-water supply of the United States, the preface can give credit to those who supplied data and who in other types of reports would be recognized as authors. A preface may be unsigned or it may carry the name or initials of the author.

*"Contents," "Illustrations," and "Tables"*

The manuscript should include lists of "Contents," "Illustrations," and "Tables." The "Contents" should consist of the headings appearing in the manuscript, except for repeated minor headings, which are omitted from "Contents." Rank of the headings should be indicated by appropriate indentation under the preceding related headings. The "Page" column should show final manuscript page numbers. All illustrations should be listed as figures in the manuscript; they will be separated into plates and figures by the illustrators in cooperation with the editors, who will then make the necessary changes in the manuscript. An exception to this rule is the paleontologist's preparation of plates on which he groups figures that show photographs or drawings of individual fossils.

Specimen lists of "Contents," "Illustrations," and "Tables" follow. The "Contents" will be recognized as a de facto outline of the report.

## CONTENTS

---

	Page
Abstract .....	1
Introduction .....	2
Regional setting .....	6
Uranium-bearing formations .....	16
Ore deposits .....	18
Distribution .....	18
Size and shape .....	22
Mineralogy .....	25
Localization of deposits .....	31
Origin .....	33
Suggestions for prospecting .....	35
Description of selected areas .....	37
Area between Craven Canyon and Coal Canyon .....	38
Craven Canyon .....	41
Red Canyon .....	47
Hot Brook Canyon .....	50
References .....	54
Index .....	56

## ILLUSTRATIONS

---

	Page
FIGURE 1. Index map of Wet Mountain area .....	8
2. Geologic map of McKinley Mountain area .....	11
3. Index map of localities of radioactive material .....	52
4. Diagrams showing trends of veins and dikes .....	63
5. Map of known thorium deposits, excluding the McKinley Mountain area .....	83

## TABLES

---

	Page
TABLE 1. Requirements of water quality for various types of industry .....	12
2. Characteristics of water desired for boiler operation .....	15
3. Miscellaneous low-flow determinations .....	39
4. Annual maximum stages of record for Red River at Coushatta, La .....	41
5. Maximum stages and discharges for each water year for period of record at Shreveport, La .....	41
6. Analysis of surface water in or near Red River Parish, La .....	49
7. Field analyses of surface waters in or near Red River Parish, La., for determining chloride content only .....	49
8. Comparative analysis of Red River .....	52

## ABSTRACT

Except for certain statistical reports and composite group efforts that may be unsuitable for the usual informative type of abstract, any but the briefest published scientific paper is preceded by an abstract; a proposal to present a paper orally must also be accompanied by an abstract.

The abstract is a digest of the report, and on its adequacy will depend much of the report's impact, durability, and usefulness. The busy reader may not read the text at all unless he has been led to it by the abstract. Too, the abstract will appear in abstract journals and indexing services and will thus increase the potential audience and the reference value in the literature. For an oral presentation, the adequacy of the written abstract will probably determine whether the author is even permitted to give his paper and, if so, whether he will draw an audience.

Some water-resources reports by their nature require a descriptive abstract, but for most Survey reports the abstract should specify the problem or the project and should briefly state the conclusions or results. It should be informative rather than descriptive; "\* \* \* are discussed," "\* \* \* was investigated," "conclusions are given" are generally inappropriate phrases for an abstract. What the report tells should be stated, not what it is about. For example:

Write "Holocene movement along the late Mesozoic faults occurred \* \* \*," not "Subsequent movements along old faults are identified \* \* \*."

Write "By this sensitive method,  $10^{-8}$  g of uranium can be detected," not "The sensitivity of the method is high."

Write "A gravity high of 25 milligals suggests that \* \* \*," not "The gravity anomalies in the area are discussed."

Write "The Cretaceous rocks yield 50 to 150 gpm of moderately mineralized water to wells 800 to 1,200 feet deep," not "Ground water in the Cretaceous rocks is described."

The abstract should indicate the method of attack and the type of data used and should clearly orient the paper in place and in function. It should supplement, not duplicate, the title in this respect and should not be merely an expression of the table of contents.

Few abstracts will be long enough or complex enough to need center headings, and few will need to be amplified by examples.

The abstract should be a complete unit, independent of the text. For this reason, reference to text tables, illustrations, and bibliography should be avoided. Rarely, an abstract may require reference to a published work; then the complete citation should be given in parentheses, not just the usual text reference to author and year of publication. No information should be given in the abstract that is not discussed in the report.

Except for papers in the Journal of Research, the Survey sets no specific limit on length for the abstract in its publications, either by total number of words or by percentage of length of text, but the

shorter the abstract the more likely it is to be read and to be included in abstract journals in its entirety and in the author's original words. Rigid limits on words or on space used are generally imposed for abstracts offered to scientific meetings; to exceed the stated limits is to risk rejection of the proffered paper.

Early rough-draft summaries are probably helpful to the author in the planning phases of report writing, but the final abstract can only be written after the manuscript is complete. Production of a good abstract—one which summarizes all the important content of the report and nothing else—deserves more care and more rewriting and polishing than any other part of the author's job.

Landes (1966, p. 1992) has written some relevant and readable paragraphs on construction of an abstract.

### *Reference*

Landes, K. K., 1966, A scrutiny of the abstract: Bulletin of the American Association of Petroleum Geologists, v. 50, no. 9, 8 p.

### TEXT

Like all forms of well-written composition, well-written Survey textual reports have a beginning, a middle, and an end—an introduction, a discussion or presentation of data, and a conclusion. These parts may appear under different names, or under no names at all if the report is short; they may also appear in many different formats and lengths. Texts that accompany maps generally consist only of discussion or presentation of data; they seldom require abstract, introduction, or conclusion.

### *The beginning*

The introduction of book reports will include, as needed, (a) a statement of the purpose of the investigation, (b) the conditions under which the work was done, (c) the plan of treatment of the subject matter, (d) acknowledgment of cooperation and help, (e) a summary of previous work in the field, and (f) notes on the most important prior publications.

The introduction may call attention to the author's outstanding conclusion on local or regional problems or on the further development of current theories and to any noteworthy differences between his conclusions and those expressed in earlier publications.

If geographic description of an area being studied is needed, a brief statement of the location, routes of approach, topography, climate, vegetation, and other features will suffice. Detailed information on these subjects will be needed in very few reports.

One "Introduction" and one "Summary" generally are enough for a single report; if a summary of one of the subdivisions seems desirable, the heading should indicate the subject discussed, as "Summary of Conditions Affecting Streamflow."

All technical and professional help from non-Survey personnel should be acknowledged, but it is usually unnecessary to mention general help given by other members of the Survey. Every Survey investigation and report has had the benefit of suggestions by the author's colleagues as a routine part of their work, and such assistance need not be recounted unless it is a noteworthy contribution to the investigation or report. If acknowledgment is to be made, an unadorned statement of the specific aid given will help fix responsibility and will probably be more pleasing to the recipient than an effusive expression of gratitude. "John Smith gave me access to his unpublished data on the ABC area of the XYZ quadrangle" is more informative than "I am extremely grateful to John Smith for the unselfish help he gave me during the compilation of this report."

Specific pieces of work by either Survey or non-Survey personnel, such as analyses, computations, and identifications of minerals and fossils, must be credited to those who made them. Such credits should be carried in the tables, lists, or statements in which the work is reported, not in the formal "Acknowledgments" paragraph. This credit is courteous, it is honest, it fixes responsibility, and it is mandatory for Survey reports.

If photographs other than the author's own are used, acknowledgment should be made of the photographer, by name, as part of the caption of each such illustration.

Family members, typists, editors, illustrators, librarians, and others contribute in many ways to the production of nearly all manuscripts. Letters of appreciation to the administrative and technical employees' supervisors are more suitable and probably more immediately profitable to the individuals than mention in a technical paper; thanks for help from family members can be expressed in personal ways.

For acknowledgments and other occasions of personal reference, the preferred form is "Joseph P. Smith" or "Mary M. Smith" the first time the person is referred to; thereafter "Smith" or "Mr., Mrs., Miss, or Ms. Smith" is used, as applicable or preferred. Usage should be consistent; don't use "Smith" in one paragraph and "Mr. Smith" in the next. Military and political titles ("Colonel," "Senator") are used in Survey papers, but academic and professional titles ("Doctor," "Professor") are omitted.

### *Presentation of data*

The main body of most reports, that is, the presentation and discussion of data, has certain common features (headings, footnotes, illustrations, tables, geologic names, geographic names, significant figures,

indexes) which warrant some detailed suggestions, as given below and in following sections.

### *Headings*

Headings should be centered, typed in caps and lowercase, and not underlined. The "Table of Contents" will indicate the rank of headings by indention, and it will be a convenience to the editor if the author indicates by circled pencil mark in the manuscript whether the heading is of first, second, or third rank. The copy editor may find that certain headings should be italic sideheads, but this determination is better left to the editor.

The text should be complete and independent of headings. In general, headings will be noun phrases though, particularly in a popular-appeal type publication, short sentences may be effective.

Headings preferably should indicate the things described or discussed in the text; thus "discussion of," "statement of," and "table showing" are usually superfluous in headings.

Excessive refinement in subdividing the text confuses the reader; three or four ranks of centerheads, plus italic sideheads where applicable, should be sufficient. (The italic sidehead has no specific rank; it is a subordinate heading used for terms or phrases that may be repeated under higher ranking headings, as "Age," "Composition," and "Chemical analysis.")

### *Footnotes*

Footnotes break the reader's train of thought; in scientific writing they are seldom needed except in the short paper having few references and no bibliographical list. A well-constructed paragraph should need no explanatory (in effect, parenthetical) footnote. Nor should the author make a footnote of a thought that came to him late and that he should have taken time to weave into his text. A rare instance in which a nonbibliographical footnote may be justified occurs when relevant contradictory or supplementary information becomes available after a manuscript is finished or in proof stage. Otherwise, footnotes are generally more appropriate to literary than to scientific writing.

### *The end*

The terminal section of the report should be a concise statement about the principal points of the subject matter. In a short report the section may not need a separate heading—it may be just the last paragraph of the text. In a longer report it may be a "Conclusion (s)," "Ap-

plication to Field Problems," "Recommendation (s) for Further Study," "Summation of Petroleum Potential," or some other applicable form of ending.

### *The reference list*

Most Survey book reports have a list of references, or a bibliography, which comes just after the conclusion of the text and before the appendix, if any, the list of tables or basic data, if any, and the index. Survey bibliographic style is discussed on pages 74-82.

### *The appendix, if any*

Only rarely is an appendix used in a Survey publication. If the author decides that his long tables of analyses, well logs, or measured stratigraphic sections would interrupt the reader's train of thought if intruded into the body of the text, he may place them after the bibliography or list of references. Before the matter goes to the printer, the editor will supply a "half-title" page to indicate "Tables," "Basic Data," or whatever. In Survey writing, an appendix, if used at all, should be limited to specialized data that will be needed only by a few of the publication's potential readers. If the report contains more than one appendix, each should be numbered for ease of reference in the text.

## INDEX

Survey indexes are alphabetized word by word, then letter by letter, on the principle that "nothing precedes something." (Some publishers index letter by letter; see University of Chicago Press, 1969, p. 415.) Thus the order of precedence in Survey indexes is:

- East end
- East Indies
- Eastern time

Indexing is a technical, and tedious, editorial function but no part of the publishing process is more essential to a useful report, or more time saving to a busy reader, than a full, well-prepared index. All but the shortest reports, or those that by their arrangement or the nature of their subject matter do not need one, should have an index. The index is not part of the manuscript but is prepared by the editor from the page proof. The author, however, can help the editor by underlining, in page proof, words that he thinks should be indexed, or he can submit with his manuscript a list of terms that should not be missed when the index is prepared.

Authors of papers that are to be listed in a computer data bank may be asked to furnish a list of "descriptors" as selected from the index thesaurus of the agency operating the bank. If the author feels that terms not included in the thesaurus are needed for adequate indexing of his paper, most of the data-bank agencies welcome additional "identifiers," "key words," or "key terms." See, for example, any issue of the semimonthly "Selected Water Resources Abstracts" and the "Water Resources Thesaurus," both published by the Office of Water Resources, U.S. Department of the Interior.

## *Reference*

University of Chicago Press, 1969, A manual of style (12th ed., revised): Chicago, 546 p.

# ILLUSTRATIONS

By ANN C. CHRISTIANSEN and DOUGLAS M. KINNEY

## PLANNING

Illustrations for Survey book reports are broadly classified as plates and figures. "Plate" as here used is arbitrarily defined as any illustration that at publication size is larger than two facing pages. A "figure" is any illustration (color photograph, black-and-white photograph, or line drawing) that can be printed within the area of two facing pages. Photographs of fossils are, in Survey reports, usually labeled "plates" but are printed as page-size illustrations; however, they will be referred to as "figures" in this section.

The author should know the limitations of the publication series or the journal for which he is writing, such as page size, number and size of illustrations, or restrictions on use of plates, color or other reproduction processes. Such information can be obtained from the map editor, by inquiry of the journal editor, or by study of recent examples of the publication toward which the report is aimed.

The author should also know something about the relative costs of various printing methods; this knowledge may be a guide toward the most acceptable form for an illustration and may save months in publication delays. In general, the cost of line cuts (figures that can be printed directly with the text) is little if any more than the cost of composing and printing text; halftone black-and-white photographs cost only a little more than text or figures unless they must be printed on special paper or require special screening in reproduction. Color photographs or multicolor maps cost a great deal more than black and white, even if they are only page size, for they must be printed from two or more plates, separately from the text, and must be inserted by hand. Any plate is far more expensive and time consuming than a figure; color plates are many times more expensive to print than simple text and figures. These cost considerations disappear with large editions, such as those of popular magazines, but for scientific reports, which are rarely published in editions of more than a few thousand copies and which require precise registry of colors, they are very real.

In some Survey reports, particularly those on national parks or monuments and those prepared as popular publications, color photographs display the beauties of geologic features to the lay public; for these reports, color reproduction is essential and functional. Any use of color photographs in reports must be justified in writing; prior discussion and tentative approval of color illustrations may avoid much wasted work.

Planning for illustrations should begin when the research project itself is planned, or very soon thereafter. By using the preliminary project description and a rough outline of the ultimate report the author should be able to visualize the approximate kinds and numbers of illustrations needed. In consultation with the map editor or other advisor, more detailed plans for illustrations should then be made. This planning should explore, among other subjects,

1. Proposed publication series and its restraints
2. Need and justification for multicolor plates and photographs
3. Need for any separate plates that must be inserted in a pocket
4. Possibility of publishing some or all of the above plates in a separate map series
5. Dimensions of figures (see table below)
6. Frontispiece
7. Base-map requirements (see the following pages)

*Publication sizes for book-report figures*

	Picas	Centimeters	Inches
<b>Professional Paper</b>			
Column			
Bottom title -----	21×51	8.9×21.6	3½×8½
Side title -----	18×54	7.6×22.9	3×9
Page			
Bottom title -----	43×51	18.1×21.6	7¼×8½
Side title -----	40×54	16.8×22.9	6⅝×9
3-Column			
Bottom title -----	64×51	27.0×21.6	10⅝×8½
Side title -----	58×54	24.4×22.9	9⅝×9
Double page			
Bottom title -----	86×51	36.2×21.6	14¼×8½
Side title -----	83×54	34.9×22.9	13¾×9
<b>Bulletin or Water-Supply Paper</b>			
Single page			
Bottom title -----	26½×39	11.1×16.5	4⅜×6½
Side title -----	23½×44	10.2×18.4	4×7¼
Double page			
Bottom title -----	53×39	22.2×16.5	8¾×6½
Side title -----	50×44	21.3×18.4	8⅝×7¼

*Publication sizes for book-report figures—Continued*

	Picas	Centi- meters	Inches
Circular			
Column			
Bottom title -----	19×48	8.1×20.3	3 <sup>3</sup> / <sub>16</sub> ×8
Side title -----	16×52	6.8×21.9	2 <sup>11</sup> / <sub>16</sub> ×8 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub>
Page			
Bottom title -----	39×48	16.5×20.3	6 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> ×8
Side title -----	36×52	15.2×21.9	6×8 <sup>5</sup> / <sub>8</sub>

The most expensive single illustration that can be planned is a complex full-color map. It is therefore imperative that much thought go into the early planning of any geologic, geophysical, or hydrologic map. Necessary to early planning is consideration of the scale needed to show such detail as the aims of the project may require. That scale normally will determine the base map that will be used. Another factor is the necessity for publication on a topographic base; perhaps the initial mapping can be on topography, but publication can be on a reduced planimetric base. How much drainage and culture are necessary to allow the user to locate himself?

Yet another factor directly affecting the cost of preparation of the map is the need to portray information in color. If color is not necessary to the legibility of the map, color publication will not be approved. Generally speaking, however, it is less expensive to prepare copy for multicolor illustrations than to cut patterns for black-and-white or two-color printing to depict complex geology. The map editor can aid the author and the supervisor in determining the necessity for color on maps.

Before approval of a project that will require preparation of a map, discussion between the geologist, geophysicist or hydrologist, the map editor, and the branch chief or supervisor should determine the base to be used and the compilation and publication scale. Determination of the publication scale is fairly simple if published topographic base maps are available. At times the detail required for the solution of the geologic problems may necessitate an enlarged base map; at other times the lesser detail needed may suggest that several topographic bases be mosaicked and reduced, perhaps as much as 50 percent. (Fifty percent is the limit of reduction that retains legibility of geographic names on the base map.) Every effort should be made to judge accurately how much data should be acquired for publication; to secure more than can be published wastes time in gathering superfluous data, in selecting data to retain and data to delete, and in final drafting. For this reason, the map editor will recommend that the compilation and publication

scales be the same; strong justification is necessary to obtain a base map at a scale larger than will be approved for publication.

The author's final compilation must be on scale-stable material if data are to be registered to the available base map. The scale-stable base should be ordered several months before it is needed; even more lead time is necessary if the base is to be a mosaic of several topographic base maps or if it is to be at a scale different from the original base maps. The map editor can advise on the types of available stable materials; because new cartographic developments bring changed materials, no effort is made here to describe the types of materials currently available.

Figures may be either narrow measure (caption printed beneath the figure parallel to the rest of the text) or broad measure (turned sideways on the page and with the caption at the bottom of the figure as the page is turned sideways). The broad-measure, or side-title, figures are occasionally unavoidable, but they are awkward for the reader, who must turn the book in order to read them, and they make for unattractive pages. They should be avoided whenever possible. Consideration should be given to redesigning or reportioning drawings or photographs, to using bleeds (extension of the photograph to the edge of the page and to the gutter) for oversized photographs, to placing explanations or captions on facing pages, or to using page-and-a-half or two-page spreads.

Standard image sizes for plates and oversize tables are given in the following table.

<i>Centimeters</i>	<i>Inches</i>
106.7×142.2	42×56
106.7×132.1	42×52
104.1×132.1	41×56
86.4×106.7	34×42 (GQ)
61.0×86.4	24×34
50.8×81.3	20×32
53.3×63.5	21×25
50.8×63.5	20×25
40.6×50.8	16×20

The north orientation of all maps of the Geologic Quadrangle (GQ) series must be on the 86.4-cm dimension of the plate. North orientation of other maps may be on either dimension of the plate.

## PREPARATION OF AUTHOR COPY

Author's original copy for every illustration should be neat, clear, and accurate. It need not be finished copy, ready for printing, for virtually all illustrations are redrafted (but see "Stratigraphic Sections \* \* \*," p. 65). Final drafting is done by the Publications Division after the report has been approved for publication, but the map editor or illus-

trator should be consulted during the preparatory stages to make sure that the author's copy is adequate for technical reviewers and illustrators. Final drafting of all illustrations generally is at publication scale.

All author's copy should be in black ink or in photographically reproducible pencil or it should be scribed. Colored inks should never be used. Lines should be no heavier than necessary; an author's heavy lines leave the exact placement of fine lines up to the illustrator, who should not determine positions of geologic features. Hand-lettering, if legible, is preferable for author's copy; the illustrator will place all final lettering.

Stick-on (zip) patterns are available for use on maps and cross sections. Choice and application of patterns are better left to the map editor and illustrator. For review copy of illustrations that are to be printed either in color or in black and white, areas to be patterned or colored are best indicated by colored pencil or ink on a paper or mylar print of the original drawing; never color the originals. Distinctive and contrasted colors should be used on review copy; if desired, a note to the illustrator may be attached to the "Check Sheet for Illustrations and Maps" with suggestions as to units to be emphasized, preferred colors, or published maps to be matched in final reproduction.

Illustrations must be complete when they leave the author. They must show all lines, symbols, numerals, letters, words, and limits of areas to be patterned or colored, and they must have explanations for symbols that are used on the illustration except the very common geologic map symbols shown on figure 1 (p. 63). Each illustration should stand alone without reference to text or to another illustration for explanation of symbols. The illustrator is an artist, but he can only trace the copy; he cannot be expected to supply missing lines or to interpret geology that may be clear to the author but is not clear on his illustration.

## CAPTIONS

Captions (titles) of all illustrations, whether of plates or figures in books or of separately published maps or charts, must be both informative and concise. For separately published illustrations, as in one of the map series, the title should express content and location, and must be short; explanatory material is placed on the illustration itself, not in the title. Captions for text figures are set in type by the printer; they may be longer than those for plates and may include explanatory material. Each illustration is different, and individual judgment must be used to describe it.

A complete title and the figure number for each illustration are typed double-spaced on a separate page; the original is placed in the text as the page following the most important reference, and a copy is attached to the mill copy of the illustration (the copy of the original

that is submitted for technical or editorial review) for forwarding to technical reviewers. The figure number is also placed on the mill copy, so that title can be matched with illustration should title and mill copy become separated. Any change in title must be made on the original and on the copy attached to the mill copy of the illustration before the report is submitted for Director's approval. This procedure assures that the title to be set in type, the title as cited in the body of the text, and the title placed on the plate by the illustrator are in agreement with the title given under the heading "Illustrations."

The following factors control the content and form of titles:

1. Identification of kind of illustration. In book reports the kind of illustration (map, photograph, diagram) should be indicated in the list of illustrations given in the front matter but generally is omitted in the figure caption itself. In separately published illustrations the kind of illustration must appear in the title. Although the map may contain secondary illustrative items such as cross sections, columnar sections, or diagrams, the map title ordinarily does not include mention of them but, if essential for giving maximum information, the presence of subsidiary or specialized data can be shown by such additions as "\* \* \* and structure," "\* \* \* and cross sections," "\* \* \* showing sample localities." Subsidiary illustrations may require subtitles; these are not part of the overall figure title.
2. Geographic location. This information must be included in titles of separately published maps; quadrangle name, county or regional location, State or region must be shown. Geographic location is not necessary in titles of figures bound within a publication unless the figures portray only part of the entire area studied.
3. Qualifications. If special conditions affect the character of a map, qualifying adjectives such as "preliminary," "sketch," "generalized," "reconnaissance," "surficial," or "bedrock" may be used.
4. Multisheet maps and separate texts. If a map is printed in several sheets or includes a pamphlet text, a common title that applies to all sheets and (or) the pamphlet must appear on each. The individual sheets should also carry subtitles that identify the individual maps.

The illustration itself should not be confused either in caption or in text with the physical actualities it represents. Thus:

The west side of figure 2 is within 35 miles of the easternmost sedimentary rocks of the western Nevada Mesozoic province \* \* \*.

A trace of the fault is exposed 5 miles north of figure 5.

The area shown in the left side of figure 2 is within 35 miles \* \* \*

A trace of the fault is exposed 5 miles north of the area shown in figure 5.

Verbal scale, scale ratio, and magnification should not be given in a caption; a rake scale should be drawn on the figure or on a translucent overlay and registered to the photograph or photomicrograph for drafting by an illustrator, because the scale of the illustration may be changed in cartographic preparation. If the picture does not contain some object such as a hammer or a person whose size is easily recognizable in relation to the rest of the picture, the size of some recognizable object should be noted in the caption.

Map-unit symbols must be included in an "Explanation" or described in the caption; they must not be used in the text.

## USE OF ABBREVIATIONS

All words on illustrations and maps should be spelled out, with the following exceptions:

1. Geographic names. The noun (as mountain, mount, river, canyon, creek) may be abbreviated if, by using the abbreviation, clutter is reduced on the map. No period is used in the body of a map or linecut after an abbreviated word.
2. Units of measurement. Always abbreviate.
3. Geologic names. Nouns such as sandstone, conglomerate, and group may be abbreviated to fit into available space. See pages 142, 148.
4. Well names. Words such as "Company," "Corporation," and "Brothers" in well names may be abbreviated.

Abbreviations are treated at greater length beginning on page 93.

## CREDITS, ACKNOWLEDGMENTS, AND COPYRIGHTS

In addition to any general acknowledgments in the text, credits for each individual illustration should be shown on the illustration or in the caption. The authorship of a map-series publication is shown on the map, usually directly under the title; however, authorship of a plate that is to be included with the text of a book publication is shown only in the geologic credit note, generally placed below the lower right corner of the map. Photographs taken by the text author are not credited to him; he is the author of the report. Photographs or other illustrations borrowed from others should, even if modified by the borrower, be acknowledged in the figure caption. (See also p. 44.)

Proprietary information, such as mine maps, drill-hole production, or sampling records, requires not only an acknowledgment but written permission from the owner, even if publication is to consist only of open filing.

If copyrighted material is to be reprinted, written permission must be obtained from the owner of the copyright and statement of such per-

mission must appear in the caption, either in the specific words requested by the owner or as "Reprinted from \* \* \* and published with permission." The author retains the written permission. (See p. 34.) Though Government-published maps and texts are not subject to copyright, proper credit must be given for cited or republished work; it is also courteous to notify the original author that his work is being used.

## TECHNICAL REVIEW OF AUTHOR COPY

The original drawing or compilation, as prepared by the author on scale-stable base, on cronaflex, or on paper, should not be submitted for technical or editorial review. Rather, a legible copy (Xerox, ozalid, or cronaflex) should be submitted. Such copy, usually referred to as "mill" copy, is the one that will be reviewed and approved for publication; it is also the copy that will be exclusively relied on by the editors and the illustrator for guidance in ordering and placing type for the final illustration that will be sent to the printer, although the illustrator will trace the original for placement and position of all linework and symbols. If there are discrepancies in linework between the original and the mill copy, cartographic preparation will be delayed while those matters are resolved. All linework corrections must be made on the original by the author; he must also indicate those corrections on the mill copy or note on the mill copy that the original is to be followed. Blurred, reduced, or otherwise illegible prints of illustrations or photographs make adequate review impossible and may well cause the reviewer to react negatively to the entire report. The time and expense of preparing final copy of illustrations for publication are directly dependent upon the legibility of the copy.

After technical review of illustrations, the author must study all questions and comments on the mill copy and make necessary changes on original illustrations. As with edited text, every query (?) by technical reviewer or map editor should be answered, either by appropriate change in the illustration or by making written reply to the query and striking the query mark. Negative one-word replies to a reviewer's comments are not acceptable. The reviewer has worked hard on the paper, and his questions deserve the author's consideration and answers. If the author wishes, he may supply a new mill copy, but he must transmit the reviewed copy, the reviewer's comments, and his reply to the comments with the new mill copy of the manuscript as it progresses through the review and approval routing.

Author, technical reviewer, and map editor should carefully check each illustration for possible errors of omission or commission. The following list, though incomplete, includes many of the points that should be checked conscientiously. The items apply particularly to review of copy for geologic maps and cross sections, but many are applicable to other types of illustrations as well.

1. Completeness:
  - a. All units are labeled on map and cross sections and are in explanation.
  - b. All geologic units in explanation are shown on map (except for subsurface units that may appear only in cross sections).
  - c. All formal geographic names within the map area that are referred to in text are shown on map.
  - d. Newly approved geographic names may be added to the base map only if the date of the domestic-names decision list on which it appeared is supplied. Unapproved or informal names are not shown on the map.
  - e. Map symbols are not used in text. (See also p. 52, 141.)
2. Correctness:
  - a. Plotting is accurate.
  - b. Geographic and geologic names are spelled correctly in text and agree with spelling on map and explanation.
  - c. Locations, directions, and dimensions (in metric or in both metric and English units; p. 193) as described in text and shown on maps and sections are in agreement.
  - d. Geologic names and ages on map explanation agree with text.
  - e. All special geologic symbols on the map appear in the explanation. The common map symbols printed on the back of map-series envelopes (fig. 1) are not shown in map explanations; the author and the map editor are responsible for deciding which symbols will be shown and which must be shown. (See also p. 62.)
  - f. Dips as drawn in cross sections agree with projections of those on map.
  - g. All features on map will be legible at intended publication scale.
3. Scale: Scale is shown graphically, in metric or in both metric and English units; ratio scale as 1:24,000, is optional but usually not shown on figures or maps which may later be enlarged or reduced.
4. Topographic contour interval and datum: Shown beneath title.
5. Caption: Title is succinct but definitive. For a plate or a series map, "map," "cross section," or other suitable descriptive term is included. "Geology of the Blank Quadrangle" is not acceptable, but "Geologic map of the Blank Quadrangle" is.
6. Authorship: Shown beneath the caption in a series map; shown in the geologic credit if in a book publication.
7. Geologic credit: Authors, compilers, and contributors are named; dates of mapping are given. A source index may be substituted.
8. Base credit: Source, date, and map projection, if other than standard topographic map, are given.

9. Cooperative note: Sponsor or cooperating organizations are shown at top of map in map series and in map plates for foreign areas. The wording to be used if the cooperating organization expresses no preference is "Prepared in cooperation with \* \* \*."
10. Marginalia:
  - a. True and magnetic north and numerical declination are shown; if standard base map is used, illustrators will add these. The magnetic north arrow and declinations are unnecessary on page-size figures; they also should not be shown on aeromagnetic map plates, for they can be a source of confusion depending on whether the declination is that of the date of the base, the date of the data collection, or the date of the publication of the map. True north arrow is unnecessary on page-size figures if latitude and longitude ticks and values are shown.
  - b. Latitude, longitude, townships, ranges, geographic reference points or grids, positions of cross sections are all shown by ticks marks, which are labeled.
  - c. Vertical scale and exaggeration ("Vertical exaggeration  $\times 2$ ") appear on sections.
11. "Check Sheet for Illustrations and Maps": Check sheet is complete, especially as to notes for draftsman regarding colors and important map units.

## TRANSMITTAL FOR APPROVAL AND PREPARATION

Mill copies of illustrations must be transmitted with the manuscript text but in a separate package at the back of the text; they should not be inserted in the text. The author should hold all original material (including line drawings and photographic negatives) until requested for use in final preparation, after Director's approval.

A list of illustrations (at one time called short list) must also be included, even though it may not be published. The list should show, for each illustration, the type (map, diagram, photograph, or other), a unique short title that is easily related to the illustration, and the manuscript page number where the illustration is most prominently described (the principal reference). The list should be typed in order of principal reference in the text, which may not be in numerical order of the first mention. The original of the list is inserted in the manuscript after the table of contents; a copy is placed in the illustrations package.

Descriptive caption material for Survey text publications should be typed on a separate page for each illustration and inserted in the text as the page following that on which the principal reference appears. A locating reference to the illustration should be placed in the text on the line after the principal reference, as:

---

FIGURE Z.—Near here

---

For journals, see specific instructions that can be obtained from the publisher.

Except for photographic plates of fossils, the author should designate all illustrations as figures. All figures should be numbered consecutively as the manuscript is prepared. Once a number is applied it must not be changed except to correct an obvious error such as a duplicate. The editor will separate plates from figures and will renumber them when the manuscript is made ready for final transmittal to the printer. Any attempt to change numbering during the evolution of a manuscript will be wasted time and will perhaps cause errors. If the final text as transmitted by the author requires rearrangement of the original order of the illustrations, this fact will be shown by the page numbering and by the order of numbers in the short list. Deletions or combinations of numbered illustrations will be shown the same way; the number of the deleted illustration will be listed, but shown as "Deleted" or "Combined with figure 7." A copy of the text caption (on a page-size sheet of paper) and a completed "Check Sheet for Illustrations and Maps" must be attached to the mill copy of each illustration. Special instructions as to placement of figures in the text should be noted on the caption sheet in the text, as, "Text Editor: Please print on page facing figure 7" or "To be printed on same page as figure 7."

Figure numbers should appear on the illustrations themselves, not on attached slips. If copy for the illustration consists of more than one piece, as a base map and an overlay sheet for geologic contacts or as three sections in three pieces, that fact should be shown on each piece, as "Figure 15, part 2 of 3 parts."

## REVIEW OF PUBLICATION DRAFTING

Transmittal routing procedures of drafted Survey illustrations vary from office to office, but before the report goes to the printer, the author will receive his original illustrations, his mill copies, and check prints of the drafted art. This material usually will accompany the edited text if the illustrations are part of a book report. ("Check prints" are washcoat-color prints or black-and-white copies of figures and photographs; "proofs" are prints from the printing press and are rarely made.) The check prints ordinarily provide the last opportunity for the author to make corrections. It is the author's responsibility to check those prints carefully for placement of lines and type, symbols, explanation, spelling, color or patterns, and titles. Any changes or corrections should be clearly marked on the check print by using a straight-edge to draw a line to the margin from the item to be corrected and noting the correction in the margin, so that the illustrator will understand the change. Any corrections or queries that have been placed

on the check prints by the illustrator or editor should also be reviewed by the author and marked to show his agreement or disagreement.

At check-print stage, significant changes not on the approved mill copy must be justified to the map editor at the time the check print is returned. The mill copy and originals must not be updated or otherwise altered at this time. All changes the author requests may not be granted. Some requests may be deleted as being unnecessary or even incorrect. The map editor will accept essential changes, and those desirable changes that can be made quickly, easily, and inexpensively.

The author must date and initial each check print; however, if the final drafted illustration is unacceptable and the author feels he must see a new, corrected check print, he should so state and should not initial that print. The author must return all the check prints, the originals, and the mill copy.

After approved changes are made in text and illustrations by the Publications Division, the manuscript and illustrations are readied for transmittal to the printer.

## DISPOSITION OF ORIGINAL ILLUSTRATIONS AND PHOTOGRAPHS

Author's original illustrations and mill copy are returned after the final drafted material is transmitted to the printer. The author should retain that material at least until the report is published. The copy that the printer uses for publication will be returned to the author if he requests it; it may be returned or discarded if he does not ask for it. Negatives for color-printing plates are now retained in the Federal Archives for reprinting. If negatives are not available, a paper print may be scanned electronically to make color negatives for reprinting. If a report is reprinted, black-and-white figures and plates are copied from the publication itself; black-and-white photographs will be prepared from the negatives on file in the Survey's Photographic Library.

All photographs, negatives, and slides should be deposited in the Survey's Photographic Library (U.S. Geological Survey, Mail Stop 914, Box 25046, Denver Federal Center, Denver, CO 80225) at the completion of each Survey project. Negatives for pictures that are used in published reports are sent to the Photographic Library by the Publications Division after preparation of copy for the printer. The collection is consulted by Survey authors and other authors who need appropriate pictures for textbooks and scientific articles.

## KINDS OF ILLUSTRATIONS AND THEIR SPECIAL REQUIREMENTS

### *Geologic, geophysical, and hydrologic maps*

Geologic, geophysical, and hydrologic maps are major illustrations and offer special problems. Planning for compilation and publication

scale is discussed on pages 50–51. In making a decision on the design of map for either map-series or book publication, the author is in reality determining its continuing availability to future users. Maps in numbered series generally are reprinted as supplies are exhausted; maps in book series are allowed to go out of print and reprinting is rarely considered. It is advantageous, therefore, for maps to be printed in one of the map series and referred to in a book publication. If necessary to the understanding of the book publication, a small-scale generalized map may be included as a substitute for a separately published large-scale map.

The author should compile his map data directly on a stable base. Compilation on an overlay provides too much chance for slippage and consequent poor registration between the overlay sheet and the base. He should use black ink, for colored inks may not print well in black-and-white direct prints nor do they photograph well; colored inks must not be used for final compilation. Scribing of the map may be substituted for ink; however, scribing requires that the base map be printed on scribe-coat material and the map compiled thereon. If a map is compiled on scribe coat, then photographic combination of the scribed lines on a screened or green base for review copy is required. The map editor can arrange for the preparation of this combination print. The author completes the map by adding geologic formation and structure symbols in ink.

All contacts should be drawn as solid lines. In special situations, dashed or dotted lines may be shown on final maps, but a special line guide is then required (colored pencil on a black-and-white print showing exactly which portions are to be dashed and which are to be dotted by the illustrator). If most contacts on a geologic map are approximately located, all should be shown as solid lines and explained, "Contact—Approximately located." The original must not be colored; a suitable paper or plastic copy should be colored as a check copy and as a mill-copy guide to the illustrator.

### *Explanations*

The explanation is an essential part of the geologic illustration, for without it the map, cross section, or diagram can be understood only with great difficulty. It is the first part of an illustration to be studied and the part that is most frequently consulted by the user. The explanation must include all information necessary to the understanding of the figure, which must stand alone without reference to the text or to another figure. However, nothing should be described in the explanation that is readily apparent on the map or its subsidiary cross sections or that is described in the text. If space within the figure is available, a unique feature can be labeled directly on the map and its symbol need not be listed in the explanation.

Two types of map explanations are used in publications of the Geological Survey, the short and the expanded. Both types usually consist of a "Correlation of Map Units," a "Description of Map Units," and a listing of the line conventions and geologic symbols used on the map. As "short" and "expanded" imply, the two types differ only in the stratigraphic and lithologic detail placed in the "Description of Map Units."

Special problems may arise in the form and layout of explanations for maps involving large areas. Recent publications of the Survey reflect experimentation in format of explanations, and the reader is referred to the maps by U.S. Geological Survey (1972), Haley (1976), and Tweto (1976).

The treatment of stratigraphic symbols and the arrangement and format of map-unit boxes in the "Explanations for Geologic Maps" are given on pages 138-142 and figure 5. The "Description of Map Units" must include the rock-stratigraphic names of the units and the systems to which the units are assigned; it may also include information such as lithologies, grain size, color, bedding characteristics, thickness, porosity, permeability, fracture characteristics, phenocryst or fossil content, remanent magnetization, correlation with other units, potassium-argon or other age determinations, and source of specific information (citation). Limiting factors for the length and detail of such explanatory material are the size of the map and the number of map units. Where space is available, an expanded "Description of Map Units" giving stratigraphic detail is desirable.

The short "Description of Map Units" includes the names of the groups, formations, or members but either no descriptive material or description limited to the major lithology. Short explanations may depend on a book text or a graphic columnar section to flesh out the bones with lithologic details.

Stratigraphic details should be limited to data from within the map area; however, limited correlations with formations in the surrounding region may be included. Citations ("references") may be included in descriptions (use the form shown on p. 79-81). All descriptions should use telegraphic style. All nonessential articles ("a," "an," "the") should be deleted; complete sentences are unnecessary; participial phrases are encouraged; and, instead of conjunctions and other superfluous words, semicolons or periods should be used to separate ideas. The description may be "paragraphed." Periods are omitted at the end of each individual entry or paragraph.

The treatment of rock-stratigraphic units and stratigraphic symbols is covered in detail in pages 138-142.

The order of discussion of the lithology may differ from map to map; it should be consistent within a given "Description of Map Units" (fig. 5). Inverted sentence structure (see p. 144) is unnecessary, because the major lithology, if any, is given in the rock-stratigraphic name; if the formation consists of a mixture of lithologies, no one being dominant,

it is better to list them all in normal word order, as "Sandy green shale and silty light-gray sandstone \* \* \*." Features that characterize a unit, such as color, permeability, or gradations in grain size, also modify the lithologic term; other information (magnetization, fossil or phenocryst content, age, and so on) follows. The order in which these subsidiary features are listed is immaterial, but usage should be consistent throughout the description. The author should consult recently published maps as a guide to preparing a "Description of Map Units."

Other parts of this book which have specific bearing on content and form of the "Description of Map Units" follow:

<i>Subject</i>	<i>Pages</i>
Abbreviations -----	93, 147
Citations -----	74
Hyphenation -----	144
Mineralogic terminology -----	174
Petrologic terminology -----	167
Punctuation -----	223
Rock-color terms -----	144
Significant figures -----	197

### *Geologic map symbols*

Geologic map symbols other than stratigraphic map symbols (see p. 138-142) are placed below the map-unit boxes. Symbols for outcrops, contacts, faults, folds, planar features, bedding, cleavage, joints, geophysical isopleths, ore and rock alterations, mine development, and oil, gas, and water wells are available from the map editor. Common map symbols given in figure 1 need not be included in the explanation; they are generally accepted and also are printed on the backs of recently issued map-series envelopes. Rarely, with the approval of the map editor, an author may devise special map symbols. Special map symbols, symbols used in a different way, or symbols with great importance to an illustration should be given in the explanation. The order of listing of symbols as generally shown is given in figure 2, but the order may be altered for emphasis. If space is available, a unique symbol may be identified directly on the map; it is not then necessary to describe it in the explanation.

### *Cross sections*

Geologic cross sections represent the author's interpretation of the structure and stratigraphy shown on the geologic map, made graphic so that the map and structure are more easily understood. The principal control is provided by the surface geologic map, by subsurface or mine maps, and by drill-hole data on or near the line of section. Cross

**GEOLOGIC MAP SYMBOLS**  
**COMMONLY USED ON MAPS OF THE UNITED STATES GEOLOGICAL SURVEY**  
 (Special symbols are shown in explanation)

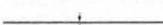
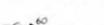
	Contact - Dashed where approximately located; short dashed where inferred; dotted where concealed	Strike and dip of beds - Ball indicates top of beds known from sedimentary structures
	Contact - Showing dip; well exposed at triangle	 Inclined  Horizontal
	Fault - Dashed where approximately located; short dashed where inferred; dotted where concealed	 Vertical  Overturned
	Normal fault - Hachured on downthrown side	Strike and dip of foliation
	Fault - Showing relative horizontal movement	 Inclined  Vertical  Horizontal
	Thrust fault - Sawteeth on upper plate	Strike and dip of cleavage
	Anticline - Showing direction of plunge; dashed where approximately located; dotted where concealed	 Inclined  Vertical  Horizontal
	Asymmetric anticline - Short arrow indicates steeper limb	Bearing and plunge of lineation
	Overturned anticline - Showing direction of dip of limbs	 Inclined  Vertical  Horizontal
	Syncline - Showing direction of plunge; dashed where approximately located; dotted where concealed	Strike and dip of joints
	Asymmetric syncline - Short arrow indicates steeper limb	 Inclined  Vertical  Horizontal
	Overturned syncline - Showing direction of dip of limbs	Note: planar symbols (strike and dip of beds, foliation or schistosity, and cleavage) may be combined with linear symbols to record data observed at same locality by superimposed symbols at point of observation. Coexisting planar symbols are shown intersecting at point of observation.
	Monocline - Showing direction of plunge of axis	Shafts
	Minor anticline - Showing plunge of axis	 Vertical  Inclined
	Minor syncline - Showing plunge of axis	Adit, tunnel, or slope
		 Accessible  Inaccessible
		x Prospect
		Quarry
		 Active  Abandoned
		Gravel pit
		 Active  Abandoned
		Oil well
		 Drilling  Shut-in  Dry hole abandoned
		 Gas  Show of gas
		 Oil  Show of oil

FIGURE 1.—Commonly used geologic map symbols. Reprinted from back of U.S. Geological Survey map-series envelope.

sections should be drawn through areas where geologic relationships at depth have economic or scientific importance and where sufficient data are available. The number of sections should be no greater than necessary to demonstrate the inferred geologic relationships. They should show significant facts that are not demonstrated elsewhere and that are difficult or impossible to describe in the text.

Structural data are best shown by cross sections oriented perpendicular to the prevailing structural trends. The sections need not necessarily extend across the entire map, particularly if little of structural importance is shown at one end or the other. They are usually oriented as if the observer were to the south, or in the southeast corner of the map area, looking north or northwestward. If a series of sections is drawn to illustrate through-going geologic structures common to all

Note: Commonly used geologic symbols are printed on the map jacket; a separately printed list is available on request from the U.S. Geological Survey.

	Contact—Approximately located; queried where probable
	Fault—Approximately located, queried where probable; dotted in water. U, probable upthrown block; D, probable downthrown block. Crosshatched were silicified
	Syncline—Showing axial trace and plunge
	Minor folds
	Open anticline, showing plunge
	Open syncline, showing plunge
	Fold with axial-plane schistosity, showing bearing, map sense, and plunge of axis
	Fold that folds schistosity, showing bearing, map sense, and plunge of axis
	Kink fold, showing bearing, map sense, and plunge
	Kink fold, showing bearing, map sense, and plunge of fold, and strike and dip of axial-plane cleavage

#### PLANAR AND LINEAR FEATURES

Where two symbols joined, observation is at point of intersection

Bedding in sedimentary rocks

	Inclined—Showing strike and dip
	Horizontal

Schistosity in metamorphosed rocks

	Inclined—Showing strike and dip
	Vertical
	Cataclastic schistosity

Schistosity parallel to relict bedding in metamorphosed rocks

	Top of beds not observed
	Top of beds observed
	Overturned bedding

	Mineral lineation—Symbol shows direction and plunge; observation at base of arrow. Letter symbol shows elongate mineral: B, biotite; H, hornblende; Q, quartz
---	---

FIGURE 2.—Sample explanation of some geologic map symbols. Abstracted from Pepper (1977).

sections and if the strikes of the through-going structures are such that a common orientation according to the rule is not possible, the sections are arranged so that the geologic structures maintain the same relationship to each other.

Exaggerated vertical scales may be used to show details of lithology or thin stratigraphic units and are particularly useful in showing surficial deposits. The vertical exaggeration should be the minimum necessary, and all sections on the same plate should have the same exaggeration. Apparent structural distortions are caused by exaggerated vertical scale in rocks having dips greater than  $10^\circ$ ; illogical and impossible structural relationships may result. Such exaggerated sections should be limited to areas of flat-lying rocks, and a suitable note should be added to the section to indicate that the true dip of a depositional or structural feature is only  $x^\circ$ .

Thin map units may be grouped in a cross section if they cannot be shown at scale. Lithologic patterns should be used sparingly on cross sections, for they must be individually drafted or scribed to follow structure, and are expensive and often difficult for the non-geologist illustrator to prepare correctly. All contacts in the cross section should be shown as solid lines (they are interpretive; queries can be inserted in contact lines for inferred contacts). Faults may be shown as solid, dashed, and queried lines. No dotted contacts or faults are shown on cross sections; if a fault or contact is projected above the surface to show structure, it should be shown by a dashed line.

### *Fence diagrams*

Fence diagrams are difficult for an author to prepare correctly and are expensive to draft for publication; they are not recommended as geologic illustrations. Several well-chosen cross sections can illustrate facies changes and structural relationships more efficiently and effectively.

### *Stratigraphic sections, lithologic columnar sections, and well logs*

Because the Publications Division illustrators may have difficulty interpreting correctly the fine lithologic detail of columnar sections and well logs, the author is urged to keep in mind publication scale and usable size of the printed illustration and to draft his material at publication scale or for not more than 20 percent reduction so that original linework can be used without redrafting; then the illustrator will need only to add type for column headings, explanation, and title. The author should consult with the map editor on line weights and special symbols. Lithologic symbols used in a graphic column must be explained separately unless the description of each unit is printed beside the column and is clear.

The vertical scale chosen for publication should be measurable directly with a metric scale. Final published width of columns should be not less than 1 nor more than 2 cm.

Special types of logs are used to show engineering and geophysical characteristics of rocks measured in exploratory drill holes. Any type of continuous log, such as electric, radioactivity, or temperature, should be drafted by the author, or under his immediate supervision, with the expectation that it will be photographed and used for final publication copy. Only the author knows what degree of generalization of a log is acceptable.

Color is unnecessary for illustration of graphic logs and sections. Black-and-white patterns and distinctive contrasting line weights are sufficient.

### *Index maps*

Most book reports and journal articles should include at least one index map which identifies the area of the report within the State or other geographic region and shows major geographic locations referred to in the report. If the report includes no major map of the specific area, a second map showing all local geographic and structural features mentioned may be necessary. An index map must include latitude and longitude (or township and range and a north arrow if latitude-longitude is not available), a rake scale, a neat line, at least minimal drainage, and cultural features such as towns. County lines, roads, and minimal topography may be included on the second map. A township and range grid alone is undesirable; the reader is better able to relate geographic position to towns, drainage, and roads. If several counties or States are included, these names should be included on the figure. The report area should be designated by pattern.

Map-series publications usually include a small outline map of the State that shows the map area in black. Additional regional index maps may also be included to show sources of information, credits for areas of mapping, and published maps of adjacent areas.

If only latitude and longitude coordinates and area outlines (but no geographic or cultural data) are given, the figure is not an "index map" but an "index."

### *Photographs*

Well-chosen photographs, each adequately described, essential to the reader's understanding of the text, and easily reproducible, are some of the best and least expensive illustrations to prepare and print. Authors should not submit more photographs than are really necessary, in the mistaken belief that a certain proportion is arbitrarily rejected. This practice wastes everyone's time and may be self-defeating because reviewer and author may not agree on the "essential" pictures.

Glossy prints should be submitted with mill copy and copies of text that go for simultaneous review. Xerox copies of photographs are not acceptable for review or for Director's approval. Negatives should be held by the author with other original illustrations until requested by Publications Division. It is important that review prints be submitted at close to final publication size so that the editors can verify that the photographs show what they purport to show.

If the author wishes to publish a photograph for which a negative is not available, especially if he has only one print of the picture, he should have made a 4- by 5-inch copy negative of publication quality. If the author wishes to publish a black-and-white photograph from a color slide or color print, a black-and-white 4- by 5-inch negative and a print at near publication size should be prepared for review and publication.

The mill copy for a color photograph should be a color print about the size at which it is to be published and should have the color rendition as desired for publication; the printer will use the mill copy as a guide to color reproduction. The original slide or color negative should be furnished for the printer's use and marked "To be returned to USGS Photographic Library."

If it is desirable to print a long narrow picture in a Professional Paper, as a panoramic view made of three or four photographs, it is better to print the photograph across two pages than to print it as a side-title figure. If as much as one-fourth inch on each of the two edges can be cropped without loss to the picture, the printer can bleed the photograph to the edges of the page. Such a photograph on a Bulletin page can be as much as 25 percent larger than the conventional-size Bulletin-page photograph. Bled photographs are exceptional, however, and should not be used indiscriminately.

Authors should generally not attempt to mount their photographs, panoramic or other, for the printer. Instructions for preparation of photographs follow.

1. Submit glossy print at publication size or indicate publication size by crop lines on overlay. Do not trim along crop lines but submit print of complete negative.
2. Request 200-line screen only for fossil plates and where fine detail is essential.
3. Do not write on emulsion side or back of photographs and do not use paper clips. Scale should be drawn outside image area or on overlay.
4. Use registered overlay to show line and symbol placement. Never draw on photographic prints.
5. Do not mount with glue, tape, or permanent attaching materials.
6. Do not place any kind of tape over image area.
7. Register all overlays by corner ticks or other marks; indicate top if not obvious.

8. Rotate photomicrographs  $90^\circ$  if necessary to fit column width; photomicrographs should not be reduced.

Instruction to the photographer concerning cropping, dodging to bring out detail, or other treatment may be placed on the mill copy, on a translucent overlay of the mill copy, or on the back of a "Check Sheet for Photographs."

Captions for photographs must note the geologic features shown. "View of Heart Mountain," for example, is insufficient. The location of the area, the direction in which the photograph was taken, and the date of photography, if pertinent to the appearance of the subject, should be a part of the caption. The caption should also contain a reference to the scale of the photograph and an explanation of any symbols shown on the overlay. Manmade structures such as head frames, except those incidental to geologic subjects, are not acceptable as illustrations.

Photographs are poorly reproduced on map presses, and map-series reports ordinarily do not contain photographs. Strong justification is required for printing photographs in map series.

### *Sketches from photographs*

Sometimes the nature or quality of photographs is such that the geologic relationships are not obvious; in addition a printed overlay showing those relationships and the names of geographic features may obscure the geology. Line drawings (sketches) prepared from the photographs can better portray the geologic information than a poor-quality photograph; a simple sketch printed beneath the photograph, or instead of the photograph, and showing the geographic and geologic features can explain the relations better than words. The author can prepare a rough sketch on a translucent overlay and submit it and the original photograph to the illustrator as a guide for making the sketch.

### *Fossil plates*

Fossil plates are usually prepared by the author, who should consult recent publications for layout and style of captions. Technical advice for the preparation and mounting of the parts of the plate can be obtained from an illustrator.

### *Aerial photographs and shaded-relief maps*

Except for the need to preserve fine detail, single aerial photographs present no special preparation or reproduction problems. Aerial photo-

graphs that are to appear as stereopairs, however, do present problems and are permitted only with strong justification. Their effectiveness depends on uniformity of tone for both photographs, as well as exact placement for stereoviewing. Moreover, few readers can see in stereo without special equipment. Stereopairs should be submitted at publication size; the author should mount the stereopair himself or work closely with the illustrator in mounting it.

For some aerial photographs and shaded-relief maps, the general rule or orientation with north at the top of a page may need to be modified. For example, the reader may be distracted by shadows that appear to invert the topography and cause him to "see" streams instead of ridges or domes instead of craters. To avoid such erroneous visual perceptions, the picture or map can be mounted upside-down so that relief is most easily perceived by the average reader. A north arrow and scale should always be added.

Inexpensive shaded-relief maps for use as index maps can be created by using special lighting to photograph the back of plastic raised-relief maps. A description of the method is given by Stacy (1962, p. D165). The author should prepare a translucent overlay registered to the photograph to show geographic and geologic features to be added by the illustrator.

The source, identification number, and date of all aerial photographs or other remotely sensed images, such as Landsat multispectral images, should be a part of the caption.

### *Frontispieces*

Rarely, a book publication contains a frontispiece, which usually illustrates the general subject of the report although it may be an outstanding picture of more specific nature. If justified, color may be approved (Ratté and Steven, 1967). It may be a panorama of the area (Love and Keefer, 1975), or a sketch or drawing.

### *Graphs and diagrams*

Many kinds of graphs can be prepared; each has its specific purpose (fig. 3). Commonly used scales include arithmetic, logarithmic, semilogarithmic, and probability, shown by a grid which may be either a complete network of lines across the diagram or merely ticks along the vertical and horizontal axes. If extension of the grid across the graph is important to the reader, the graph or diagram should be outlined and ticked on all four sides. The grid should be extended to include all data shown on the graph.

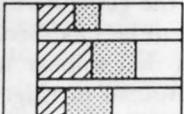
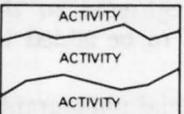
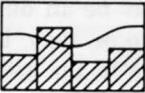
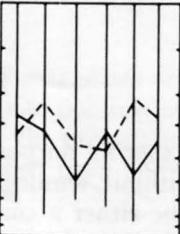
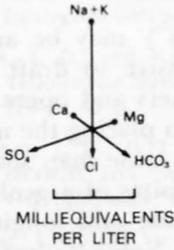
TYPE OF GRAPH	EMPHASIS
 <p>ACTIVITY</p> <p>TIME</p>	Line or curve ----- Trend or rate of activity of relatively continuous data
 <p>ACTIVITY</p> <p>PERCENT</p>	Bar or horizontal bar ----- Volume of data for different items at the same time
 <p>ACTIVITY</p> <p>TIME</p>	Column or vertical bar ----- Sharply fluctuating magnitudes of data for one item at different times
 <p>ACTIVITY</p> <p>ACTIVITY</p> <p>ACTIVITY</p> <p>PERCENT</p> <p>TIME</p>	Surface of band ----- Amount of data
 <p>ACTIVITY</p> <p>TIME</p>	Symbol (unconnected by lines) ----- General trend or activity of data (as daily maximum and minimum temperatures over a period of time)
	Combination ----- Combines two or more of the preceding forms
	Nomograph ----- Depicts the relation of quantities, values, and numbers used for solving a succession of nearly identical problems

FIGURE 3.—Various types of graphs and their nature.

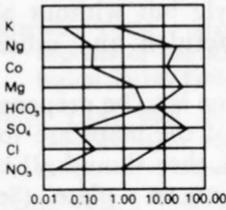
Scales are generally labeled only along the left and bottom axes. Scale numbers should increase from bottom to top and from left to

TYPE OF GRAPH

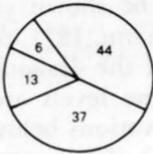
EMPHASIS



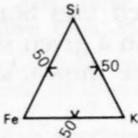
Radiating vectors diagram ----- Shows results of analyses



Semilog concentration graph --- Shows distribution of selected groups of data



Circular (pie) diagram ---- Subdivision of a whole by means of a circle which is divided into percentages



Triangular diagram ----- Shows composition in terms of relative amounts of three components



Schmidt equal area projection ----- Shows azimuths measured clockwise from north and about a point directly beneath the observer (if grid is deleted, center point is shown by a "+" and north is ticked)

FIGURE 3.—Continued

right. Captions for axes are all in capital letters; they should be complete, and include the unit of measurement as "\_\_\_\_, IN PERCENT." All symbols used on the graph or diagram must be explained either in an "Explanation" or in the figure caption.

## *Mine maps*

Detailed mine maps (not "plans" or "plan maps") may be an essential part of a report. They are, however, expensive to draft and many times are of interest only to specific mine owners and operators. If of limited interest, consideration should be given to placing the maps in open file. Regardless of method of publication, a mine map should have a complete explanation and all the other requisites of a geologic map (north arrow, scale, location in terms of latitude and longitude ticks or, at minimum, section, township, and range). Notes leaded to points of pertinent observations may take the place of a lengthy explanation; such notes should be in telegraphic style but without abbreviations except for units of measurement (Sheridan and others, 1967, pls. 2-7).

If a series of maps of various levels of the same mine is to be prepared, the maps should all be at the same scale. If some of the maps are too large to be printed on a single page or facing pages, they should all be grouped in a logical and easily understandable fashion on a plate. (See Hawley, 1969, pl. 4.) A second color may be used to depict ore or other mineralization and geology if such features cannot be shown clearly by black-and-white patterns (Bergendahl and Koschmann, 1971, pl. 2).

Mine levels may be designated in two ways: (a) If the designations merely constitute a numbering system in which mine levels are not separated by precise intervals or located at precise elevations below the surface or other datum, "100 level" is appropriate; (b) if the company designation in addition represents surveyed or precise elevation, "100-foot level" is appropriate. If the mining company itself uses both systems, either is acceptable but only one should be used in a given report. Names for levels or other workings, if they need to be shown, should be those applied by the mine operator.

## *Engineering drawings*

Circuit diagrams, working drawings for construction of laboratory apparatus, and patent drawings (which are usually exploded drawings of the working model) are sometimes required in a specific type of geologic report. The advice of a professional engineering draftsman should be sought before attempting such a drawing.

## REFERENCES

- Bergendahl, M. H., and Koschmann, A. H., 1971, Ore deposits of the Kokomo-Tenmile district, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 652, 53 p.
- Haley, B. R., 1976, Geologic map of Arkansas: U.S. Geological Survey, scale 1:500,000.

- Hawley, C. C., 1969, Geology and beryllium deposits of the Lake George (or Badger Flats) beryllium area, Park and Jefferson Counties, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 608-A, 44 p.
- Love, J. D., and Keefer, W. R., 1975, Geology of sedimentary rocks in southern Yellowstone National Park, Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 729-D, 60 p.
- Pepper, J. D., 1977, Bedrock geologic map of the Hampden Quadrangle, Massachusetts and Connecticut: U.S. Geological Survey Geologic Quadrangle Map GQ-1368, scale, 1:24,000.
- Ratté, J. C., and Steven, T. A., 1967, Ash flows and related volcanic rocks associated with the Creede Caldera, San Juan Mountains, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 524-H, 58 p.
- Sheridan, D. M., Maxwell, C. H., and Albee, A. L., 1967, Geology and uranium deposits of the Ralston Buttes district, Jefferson County, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 520, 121 p.
- Stacy, J. R., 1962, Shortcut method for the preparation of shaded-relief illustrations, *in* Short Papers in Geology, Hydrology, and Topography: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 450-D, p. D164-D165.
- Tweto, Ogden, 1976, Preliminary geologic map of Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Miscellaneous Field Studies Map MF-788, scale 1:500,000.
- U.S. Geological Survey, 1972, Surficial geologic map of Yellowstone National Park: U.S. Geological Survey Miscellaneous Geologic Investigations Map I-710, scale 1:125,000.

## ADDITIONAL READING

- Allen, Arly, 1976, Steps toward better scientific illustrations: Lawrence, KS 66044, Allen Press, 33 p.
- Guidance in the preparation of figures by the person without access to professional illustrators.
- American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 1970, AAPG slide manual: 33 p.
- A book on how to prepare legible projection slides.
- Blackadar, R. G., Dumych, H., and Griffin, P. J., 1975, Guide to authors—A guide for the preparation of geological maps and reports: Geological Survey of Canada Miscellaneous Rept. 16, 199 p.
- The STA of the Geological Survey of Canada.
- Keates, J. S., 1973, Cartographic design and production: New York, John Wiley, 235 p.
- A guide for readers interested in learning about printing processes as well as cartographic methods.
- Ridgeway, J. L., 1920, Preparation of illustrations for reports of the United States Geological Survey \* \* \*: U.S. Geological Survey, 101 p.
- "\* \* \* with brief descriptions of processes of reproduction (title page)." For many years "Ridgeway" was the standard guide for preparation of illustrations for Survey reports. "Ridgeway" has long been out of print, and much of its information is out-dated, particularly its descriptions of drafting and reproduction techniques, but it is still of historical interest.

## MATTERS OF STYLE

### REFERENCES

Most scientific reports contain references to other researchers. If the report contains only a few references, the complete citations may be given in footnotes or in parentheses in the text. The more common Survey practice is to give the author, date, and page(s) of reference in text in parentheses and then to list complete citation at the end of the report. Survey style tries to avoid any need for "idem," "op. cit.," or "ibid."

Footnote references are indicated in the text by a "shelf" (—/). The footnote is typed just below the line in which the reference mark appears and is set off by rules above and below. The "shelf" in the text is placed just after the name of the author cited or, if the name is in the possessive form, after the noun following it ("Gilbert's theory —/"). Footnotes should not be numbered by the author; the numbering will be done by the editor after all eliminations and additions have been made, just before the manuscript goes to the printer.

### *Reference in text*

If the reference pertains to only one text sentence, the identifying information is usually given in parentheses at the end of the sentence unless the reference is not pertinent to some part of the sentence, as in "Anchorage was severely damaged by landslides, ground subsidence, and fissures during the 1964 earthquake (Hansen and others, 1966, p. 73), but little effect of this damage is now visible." If the author's name naturally falls in the sentence, only the date and the page reference are included within parentheses, as in "Schaller (1911, p. 49) reported that the type specimen of this material contained 3.21 percent  $\text{Li}_2\text{O}$ ." If the reference pertains to more than one preceding sentence it may be identified in a separate sentence, as "(See Hansen and others, 1966, p. 73.)" All text references should indicate the appropriate page and (or) illustration numbers unless the reference is to an alphabetical compendium such as a dictionary or glossary. It is an inconsiderate author who forces his readers to search the citation index for his reference, with no guarantee of success when they search.

References to several publications of an author in the same year are distinguished by adding a, b, c . . . after the year, in chronological order

of publication: "(Campbell, 1970b, p. 205)." If a paper has two authors, the material within the parentheses should have both authors' names, as in "Ephesite contains as much as 3.80 percent  $\text{Li}_2\text{O}$  (Schaller and Carron, 1952, p. 301)." If it has three or more authors and if there is only one reference that can be so cited, the reference may be to the first-named author "and others," as in "(Palache and others, 1951, p. 825)," instead of "(Palache, Berman, and Frondel, 1951, p. 825)."

Multiple text references are in chronological-alphabetical, inverse-recency order:

(Smith, 1962, p. 67; Jones, 1970, p. 406-410)

(Smith, 1962, p. 84; 1971, p. 98-104; Jones, 1970, p. 612)

(Smith, A. B., 1962, p. 3-42; Smith, A. J., 1962, p. 104; Jones, 1970, p. 91-98)

References should be identifiable and, in general, available for reference. Perhaps "(V. E. McKelvey, oral commun., or written commun., 1974)" is the best that can be done for data and opinions given orally or by personal correspondence, but for other correspondence, file maps and other data, unpublished theses, administrative reports, and perhaps some manuscripts in preparation, the reader may feel entitled to more tangible information. An unpublished thesis might be identified in text, for instance, as "(J. P. College, 1968, 'Well on Fire!': New Orleans, La., Tulane University, unpublished thesis, p. 10-51)." If the same thesis is referred to more than once, it might be identified by listing in "References" rather than in text. The text citation would then be "(College, 1968, p. 10-51)." If unpublished data are cited, the compiler and (or) place where the data are on file should be given. The dates of all types of unpublished data should be included—they may be vital factors in the value of the data. An unpublished report could be identified in text or "References" by appropriate variation of the following:

Harris, Leo, 1964, Maintenance foreman's report on earthquake damage: Unpublished data on file in Valdez office of Alaska Department of Highways.

Open-file reports of the Survey and other organizations may be cited and included in "References" if information is given as to where they are available for inspection or distribution (see example 17).

In general, the titles of books, articles, and reports that are quoted in text are enclosed in quotation marks and their first word and all important words are capitalized: "Dictionary of Alaska Place Names," "Standard Handbook of Prepositions, Conjunctions, Relative Pronouns, and Adverbs." This practice applies if the complete formal title is quoted. For references that are to be used many times in text, a shortened informal term may be identified and used, thus "Webster's Third New International Dictionary of the English Language" (WNI 3), then, after first usage, "WNI 3" (used without quotation marks); "U.S. Government Printing Office Style Manual" (GPO SM, or GPO style

manual), then, after first usage, "GPO SM" or "GPO style manual" (used without quotation marks).

See "Choice of Tense" (p. 211) for discussion of verb tense to be used for references.

### *Reference list*

The style detailed below for listing references is applicable for most Survey textual and map reports. Style for listing items in special-purpose bibliographies and in other special reports may vary.

In the reference list, items appear by author in alphabetical-chronological order; all of a single author's works are listed before those he has co-authored. Preferred multiple-author precedence is illustrated in examples 3, 4, 25, 36. Repetition of a name or group of names is avoided by use of a dash (see examples 27, 28). The dash indicates that the name(s) of the author(s) of the reference is exactly the same as the omitted name(s). That is, if Jones, A. J., is the author of the reference immediately preceding a reference by A. J. Jones and B. M. Smith, a dash would not be used. The dash is written next to the date, with no space or punctuation between.

The heading "References Cited" or "References" is used if all the citations listed are referred to in the text. "Selected Bibliography" or "Selected References" is used if the list is more extensive, "Bibliography" if it is exhaustive.

The elements of the citation should be given in the order shown below. An initial "The" is given in the title of a book or article but is usually omitted in all other elements of the reference list.

1. Author(s), editor(s), or compiler(s), as applicable.

a. If author is named:

- (1) Individual author(s): Surname first. Authors are preferably identified by initials of given names, but if the author uses only one given name it is spelled out: Butts, Charles. If necessary for unique identification, the first or both given names may be spelled out: Jones, John Josephus, III. In listing the last name, the author's own usage, if ascertainable, or the custom of his country should be followed. Otherwise, in general, if there is a prefix that is a definite article (La, Le, L') or a preposition and an article that form one word (Dall', Du, Della, Lo), the prefix is considered to be part of the surname. A prepositional prefix of a foreign name standing alone is not considered to be part of the surname. (See examples 10, 19, 32.) The prefix of an anglicized name is considered to be part of the

surname, but different families—or even different members of the same family—may have different preferences for spelling their names Du Pont, Du-Pont, Dupont; La Fayette, LaFayette, Lafayette; Vanderbilt, *but* Van Gessen, Van Valkenburg. Compound names are common in some countries; these names should ordinarily be cited under the first name of the compound. Diacritical marks, if applicable, follow the author's usage. (See examples 9, 19.)

(2) Corporate author (s): See example 8.

- b. If no author is named: Name of periodical in which published or name of publishing organization or sponsor (see example 24).
2. Year of publication. If year of publication is not shown but is known, it is given in brackets (see example 5). If the actual date of publication is known to be different from date shown in the imprint, both these dates should be given (see example 22).
3. Title of work cited, as taken from title page of book, heading of article, or face of map. If there is more than one edition of the work, the referenced edition must be indicated, otherwise the page reference in text may confuse the reader. If the typographical style of a title page omits needed punctuation, it should be supplied:

Philmont Country  
The Rocks and Landscape of  
A Famous New Mexico Ranch

in "References" would read: "Philmont Country [dash, comma, or semicolon] the rocks and landscape of a famous New Mexico ranch." If the reference is an abstract, the fact should be shown by inserting "[abs.]" just before the colon that follows the title (see example 15). If the reference consists of only part of a publication, care should be taken to make clear what is the part and what is the whole; "pt. 2 of," "v. 6 of," and "in" are helpful in making this distinction clear (see examples 3, 7, 14). A colon follows the title.

4. a. For books, the order after the colon is (1) place of publication, (2) publisher's name, and (3) pagination exclusive of preliminary matter pagged in Roman numerals.
- b. For series of publications or for articles in periodicals, give (1) name of periodical or series, (2) the place of publication and publisher's name if needed to identify the publication, (3) volume and number, as pertinent, in Arabic numerals, and (4) pagination.
- c. For maps, the reader will probably be interested in the scale and in the number of sheets if more than one (see example

6). Mention of scale is particularly important if the map cited is a source for a compilation map at another scale.

- d. Citation of the proceedings or other publications of congresses, conferences, and similar meetings should include (1) name of the congress or conference, (2) number of meeting, if any, (3) the city (or city and country) and year of the meeting, (4) title of the publication, and (5) collation (series, volume, part, pagination) if meaningful. If the organization held more than one meeting in a calendar year, the exact date of the meeting should be given. The information may be given in whatever order best approximates the order of the title page (or cover, if there is no title page) of the publication.

The parts of the author-year-title and of the place-publisher and publication-collation elements are usually separated by commas, but a semicolon or a period may be used if needed for clarity (see example 16).

In naming the corporate author or the publishing organization, the order is from the larger to the smaller unit:

U.S. Treasury Department Internal Revenue Service  
 Michigan Department of Conservation  
 U.S. Atomic Energy Commission Technical Information Service  
 U.S. Navy Bureau of Ships  
 American Institute of Architects and Engineers Joint Council Committee

The full corporate name is not needed in listing most commercial publishers. Thus, "Merriam" is sufficient to identify "G. & C. Merriam Co.," "Macmillan" is enough for "The Macmillan Company," and "John Wiley" for "John Wiley and Sons, Inc." If the publication or the publisher is likely to be difficult to identify, more detailed information may be needed.

The Government Printing Office is given as the publisher of reports issued by special or temporary Federal bodies but is ordinarily not listed in citations of reports issued by permanent Federal agencies.

The abbreviations "U.S." and "U.S.S.R." or "SSSR" are used, but names of other countries and of States, provinces, and cities should be spelled out. Other abbreviations in the reference list should be limited to those for collation terms (ser., v., sec., pt., no., p.) and for descriptive terms such as "edition," "abstract," and "supplement." The other reference information should be given in complete form.

In general, Arabic numerals are substituted for Roman numerals unless the Roman numerals appear in a title or in a cited page reference, as "Baker (1958, p. iii-xiv)."

Collation terms of foreign publications are given by their approximate English equivalents as far as possible.

	<i>Volume</i>	<i>Part</i>	<i>Number</i>	<i>Page</i>
Bohemian (Czech)	svazek, kniha	část	číslo	strana
Danish	bind, aargang	del	nummer, hefte	side
Dutch	boekdeel, jaargang	aflevering, deel	nummer	bladzijde, pagina
French	volume, tome, année	part, fascicule	numéro	page
German	Band, Jahrgang	Teil	Nummer, Heft	Seite
Greek	τόμος	μέρος	αριθμός	σελίς
Hungarian	kötet	rész	szám	lap
Italian	volume, anno	parte	numero	pagina
Norwegian	bind	del	nummer, hefte	side
Polish	rok, ksiazka, tom	cześć	numer	stronca
Portuguese	volume, tomo, anno	parte	numero	pagina
Russian	том	часть	выпуск номер	страница
Spanish	volumen, tomo, año	parte	número	página
Swedish	volym, band	del	häfte, num- mer, numro	sida, page
Turkish	cilt	cüz	sayı	sahife

### *Examples of cited references*

The sequential numbers of the following examples are for reference in this book. Citations in Survey manuscript reports should not be numbered.

1. Alvarez, Walter, 1973, Uncoupled convection and subcrustal current ripples in the western Mediterranean, in Shagam, R., and others, eds., *Studies in earth and space sciences: Geological Society of America Memoir 132*, p. 119-132.
2. Baar, C. A., 1972, Creep measured in deep potash mines vs. theoretical predictions, in *Canadian Rock Mechanics Symposium, 7th, Edmonton, 1972, Proceedings: Ottawa, Department of Energy, Mines, and Resources*, p. 23-77.
3. Bailey, E. H., Blake, M. C., Jr., and Jones, D. L., 1970, On-land Mesozoic oceanic crust in California Coast Ranges, in *Geological Survey Research 1970: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 700-C*, p. C70-C81.
4. Bailey, E. H., Irwin, W. P., and Jones, D. L., 1964, Franciscan and related rocks, and their significance in the geology of western California: *California Division of Mines and Geology Bulletin 183*, 177 p.

5. Bateman, A. M., [1950], *Economic mineral deposits* (2d ed.): New York, John Wiley, 916 p.
6. Bayley, R. W., and Muehlberger, W. R., compilers, 1968, *Basement rock map of the United States, exclusive of Alaska and Hawaii*: U.S. Geological Survey, scale 1:2,500,000, 2 sheets.
7. Byerly, Perry, 1938, *Comment on The Sierra Nevada in the light of isostasy*, by Andrew C. Larson, 1936, (*in Geological Society of America Bulletin*, v. 47, no. 11, p. 1691-1712): Geological Society of America Bulletin, v. 48 (supp.), p. 2025-2031.
8. Chase Manhattan Bank, 1976, *Capital investments of the world petroleum industry 1975*: New York, 32 p. [in press].
9. Coloma Pérez, Antonio, 1952, *Sobre la velocidad de propagacion de las ondas superficiales en un medio elastico-viscoso* [On the velocity of propagation of the superficial waves in an elastic-viscous medium]: *Revista de Geofísica*, v. 11, no. 44, p. 319-327.
10. Donder, Th. de, 1953, *Le calcul des variations introduit dans la théorie des espèces et des variétés* [The calculus of variations in the theory of species and varieties]: *Académie Royale de Belgique Bulletin de la Classe des Sciences*, v. 39, no. 3, p. 255-256.
11. Du Toit, A. L., 1927, *A geological comparison of South America with South Africa*: Carnegie Institution of Washington Publication 381, 158 p.
12. Fairbanks, H. W., 1904, San Luis [Quadrangle], California, folio 101 of *Geologic atlas of the United States*: U.S. Geological Survey.
13. Grigg, A. O., 1972, *A program for calculating Thiessen average rainfall*: Crowthorne, Berkshire, England, TRRL Report LR 470, Department of Environment Transport and Road Research Laboratory, 18 p.
14. Handin, J. W., and Griggs, David, 1951, *Predicted fabric changes, pt. 2 of Deformation of Yule Marble*: *Geological Society of America Bulletin*, v. 62, no. 8, p. 863-886.
15. Hillhouse, D. N., 1960, *Geology of the Piney River-Roseland titanium area, Nelson and Amherst Counties, Virginia* [abs., Virginia Polytechnic Institute Ph. D. dissertation]: *Dissertation Abstracts*, 1965, v. 25, no. 10, p. 5861.
16. Johnson, D. W., 1938 (v. 1), 1939 (v. 2), *Origin of submarine canyons*: *Journal of Geomorphology*: New York, Columbia University Press, v. 1, no. 2, p. 111-129, no. 3, p. 230-243, no. 4, p. 324-340; v. 2, no. 1, p. 42-60, no. 2, p. 133-158, 213-236.
17. Kepferle, R. C., 1974, *Geologic map of parts of the Louisville West and Lanesville Quadrangles, Jefferson County, Kentucky*: U.S. Geological Survey Open-File Report 74-18, Lexington, Ky., Kentucky Geological Survey.
18. Lamphere, E. M., and Page, W. B., 1956, *Final report on water supply for proposed ANHS hospital at Kotzebue, Alaska*: Anchorage, Arctic Health Research Center unpublished report, 48 p.
19. La Rüe, E. A., de, 1937, *Le volcanisme aux Nouvelles Hébrides* [Volcanism in the New Hebrides]: *Bulletin Volcanologique*, ser., 2, v. 2, p. 79-142.
20. Le Borgne, Eugene, 1955, *Sur la susceptibilité magnétique du sol* [On the magnetic susceptibility of the soil]: *Istanbul Universitesi Fen Fakültesi Mecmuasi*, ser. C, v. 20, pt. 2, p. 129-167.
21. Leopold, L. B., 1969, *The rapids and the pools—Grand Canyon*, *in The Colorado River region and John Wesley Powell*: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 669, p. 131-145.
22. Mapel, W. J., 1954 [1955], *Geology and coal resources of the Lake De Smet area, Johnson County, Wyoming*: U.S. Geological Survey Coal Investigations Map C-23, scale 1:48,000.
23. Ngo, Ton-That, 1967, *Irrigation, drainage, and flood control in Vietnam*: International Conference on Water for Peace, Washington, D.C., May 23-31, 1967: Washington, U.S. Government Printing Office, v. 8, p. 272-281.
24. *Oil and Gas Journal*, 1952, *Where are those Gulf Coast salt domes?*: v. 51, no. 14, p. 130, 133-134.

25. Pardee, J. T., 1933, Placer deposits of Western United States, in *Ore deposits of the Western States* (Lindgren volume): American Institute of Mining and Metallurgical Engineers, p. 410-450.
26. Phillips, K. N., 1968, Hydrology of Crater, East, and Davis Lakes, Oregon, *with a section on Chemistry of the lakes*, by A. S. Van Denburgh: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1859-E, p. E1-E60.
27. Thayer, T. P., 1967, Chemical and structural relation of ultramafic and feldspathic rocks in Alpine intrusive complexes, in Wyllie, P. J., ed., *Ultramafic and related rocks*: New York, John Wiley, p. 222-239.
28. ——— 1972, Gabbro and epidiorite versus granulite and amphibolite: A problem of the ophiolite assemblage: Caribbean Geological Conference, 6th, Palomar, Venezuela, 1972, *Proceedings*, p. 315-320.
29. U.S. Bureau of Mines, 1972, Ilmenite, rutile, and titanium sections, in *Commodity data summaries*: p. 68-69, 126-127, 154-155.
30. Vinogradov, A. P., and others, 1969, The structure of the mid-ocean rift zone of the Indian Ocean and its place in the world rift system: *Tectonophysics*, v. 8, no. 4-6, p. 377-401.
31. Van Valkenburg, Alvin, Jr., and Insley, Herbert, 1950, The synthesis of fluosilicate minerals: *Ceramic Age*, v. 56, no. 5, p. 20-22.
32. Voorthysen, J. H. van, 1940, *Geologische undersøchingen im Distrikt Amfoan (Nordwest Timor)* [Geologic investigations in the Amfoan District (North-west Timor)], in Brouwer, H. A., leader, *Geological expedition of the University of Amsterdam to the Lesser Sunda Islands \* \* \**: Amsterdam, N.V. Noord-Hollandsche Uitgevers Madtshappij, v. 2, p. 345-367.
33. Williams, G. J., 1965, Iron- and titanium-bearing minerals, in *Economic geology of New Zealand: Commonwealth Mining and Metallurgical Congress, 8th, Australia and New Zealand, 1965, Publications*: Melbourne, Australasian Institute of Mining and Metallurgy, v. 4, p. 127-142.
34. Williams, J. R., 1965, Ground water in permafrost regions—an annotated bibliography: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1792, 294 p.
35. Williams, J. R., Péwé, T. L., and Paige, R. A., 1959, *Geology of the Fairbanks (D-1) Quadrangle, Alaska*: U.S. Geological Survey Geologic Quadrangle Map GQ-124, scale 1:63,360.
36. Williams, J. R., and Waller, R. M., 1965, Ground-water occurrence in permafrost regions of Alaska: *International Conference on Permafrost, Lafayette, Ind., 1963, Proceedings*, p. 159-164.

### *Additional reading*

The bibliographic style detailed in the preceding pages is the style of the Survey only. There are probably as many bibliographic styles as there are publishing organizations, and the Survey author pointing his report to a particular outside journal should familiarize himself with that journal's bibliographic style. Some basic principles of bibliography are given in the University of Chicago style manual (p. 371-388). The Library of Congress (LC) has published a guide to its bibliographical procedures and style which gives, by each element of the entry, the LC style for listing documents, serials, and books, pamphlets, and other monographic publications. The guide contains a selected list of references on bibliographic procedures and techniques (p. 113-115); it was published in 1954 and reprinted with a list of abbreviations in 1966.

## *References*

- McCrum, B. P., and Jones, H. D., 1954, *Bibliographical procedures & style—A manual for bibliographers in the Library of Congress*: Library of Congress, 133 p.
- University of Chicago Press, 1969, *A manual of style* (12th ed., revised): Chicago, 546 p.

## TABLES

A well-constructed table is a concise and effective means of presenting related data. Table construction is a minor but complex art; it has its basic laws, conventions, and obscure connotations as does any other art or science. For Survey tabular style the principal guide and source of detailed information is the GPO style manual (1973, p. 187–225); other sources are Jenkinson (1949) and University of Chicago (1969, p. 273–294). The tabular styles of these three guides differ a little from each other and from Survey tabular style, so the author might profitably seek editorial advice on drafts of tables before putting them into final manuscript form.

Samples of tables of more or less standard format for Survey papers are given at the end of this section and in the sections on water resources and on stratigraphy. Tables in some reports published during the period of conversion from English units of measure to the International System of Units will give measurements in both metric and English units.

In constructing tables of unique format, the author should be aware that the simpler the table's design, the more effective its communication. A very complex table can become almost a form of cryptogram. Readers are timid creatures, easily frightened into turning to the next page, and a Great Horned Table is enough to frighten the hardiest reader into turning to the next book. Several simple, easily understood tables may be preferable to one overly complex table.

Tables should, so far as possible, be constructed to fit narrow measure on the page. It is difficult for the eye to follow a parallel (double-page) table across the gutter even if the registry of the two pages is accurate, and it is irritating to the reader to have to turn the publication back and forth to read a wide-measure table. However, some long-used and useful Survey tables have parallel formats; still others have wide-measure formats.

A table should be introduced by a statement in the text, but this statement should not duplicate the table title. As a rule, a table should have a brief title that indicates the principal items of information included, but short tabulations that are introduced in the text with some such statement as "The following table shows \* \* \*" may not need a title. Phrases such as "Table showing" and "Number of" are not needed in a table title.

Most tables are numbered for convenience of reference, although a table that can immediately follow its only reference need not be numbered. Tables are numbered in order of their physical placement in the report. If a long table or tables would break up the continuity of the text matter, the author may consider placing the table(s) at the end of the report, after the reference list and before the index.

The terminology and order of the table title should correspond to the terminology and order of items in the body of the table, and consistency of terminology should be maintained among tables, illustrations, and text. If the table title reads "Analysis of samples," the text references and the body of the table should not use "specimen," "fraction," or other term interchangeably when referring to what the title calls "samples."

Except for a specialized, seldom-used form of table consisting entirely of figures, the body of a table consists of a stub column or block and related data reading across from the stub. The stub should be arranged in some logical sequence: alphabetical, chronological, numerical, stratigraphic, east to west, north to south, smallest to greatest, downstream, upstream, or such, and the order should be stated if it is not readily apparent. If a lengthy table has become far advanced in preparation before the matter of logical order has had proper attention, a first column may be added as a patchwork remedy simply to give the stub item is a lengthy phrase. Reference to "item 26 of table 4" may be useful in tables that are to have many text references, particularly if the stub item is a lengthy phrase. Reference to "item 26 of table 4" may be preferable to repetition of "laccoliths related to East Mountain stock (table 4)."

Generally, the factor that governs the order of a table should be the stub column; for example, if table entries are in chronological sequence, the pertinent dates usually will be either the stub column or a column of the stub block. Again speaking generally, only one type of data should be entered in one column of a table, though a "Remarks" final column may be preferable to an excessive number of columns for miscellaneous bits of data.

Only in first or last column may space be left blank in the body of a table. If a test was made and the material or condition tested for was not found the proper entry is "0." If no test was made, if no data are available, if the column factor is not applicable to the stub item, leaders or an applicable symbol (n.d., n.a.) should be entered and the symbol should be explained in the headnote.

Except for tables that are forwarded as camera-ready copy, long tables consisting mainly of statistical matter may be submitted in handwritten form, provided always that they are clearly legible. Manuscript tables in engineer's lettering are fully acceptable.

Each manuscript table should be on a separate page or pages because it probably will be set in type by different workers from those setting

the text. A typed manuscript table should be double spaced and should have wide margins all around, to allow space for instructions to the printer.

Explanatory remarks pertaining to the title or to the whole table should be given in a bracketed headnote, written in telegraphic style, and centered just below the title. If the headnote is lengthy, as are those of some tables, it may not be bracketed. The footnote reference numbers of each succeeding table start with the numeral 1; they are indicated by superior figures (<sup>1 2 3 . . .</sup>) and are written in numerical order from left to right across the page, beginning with the first line then going across each succeeding line. Leaders are used in the stub column and across the entire table, except that they are omitted from a last reading column or a first or last date column. Detailed instructions for the placement of footnotes, references, and leaders are given in the GPO style manual (1973, p. 202-203, 205). As an economy measure, downrules are not supplied unless specifically requested.

The following tables are examples or adaptations that have been published in Survey reports.

### Sample tables

SAMPLE TABLE A.—Mean bulk densities of rock specimens in the Haile-Brewer area

Lithologic unit	Number of samples	Mean bulk density (g/cm <sup>3</sup> )	Range of density
Intrusive rocks			
Granite -----	8	2.69	2.62-2.82
Do <sup>1</sup> -----	10	2.65	2.62-2.69
Do <sup>2</sup> -----	36	2.64	2.40-2.72
		<sup>3</sup> 2.65	
Gabbro -----	5	2.93	2.84-3.05
Do <sup>2</sup> -----	7	2.98	2.91-3.03
		<sup>3</sup> 2.96	
Diabase -----	55	2.97	2.79-3.08
Do <sup>2</sup> -----	13	2.91	2.86-2.98
		<sup>3</sup> 2.96	
Felsic hypabyssal rocks ----	12	2.58	2.38-2.69
Mafic hypabyssal rocks ----	4	2.92	2.92-3.07
Carolina slate belt rocks			
Sedimentary rocks -----	8	2.64	2.42-2.77
Do <sup>2</sup> -----	5	2.61	2.40-2.81
Mica gneiss <sup>2</sup> -----	3	2.73	2.67-2.80
Volcaniclastic rocks -----	8	2.59	2.38-2.74
Do <sup>4</sup> -----	13	2.79	2.63-2.99
		(2.84)	(2.70-3.05)
		<sup>3</sup> 2.69	

<sup>1</sup> Sloan (1908, p. 217-225).

<sup>2</sup> Waskom and Butler (1971, table 2, p. 2835).

<sup>3</sup> Weighted average mean.

<sup>4</sup> McCormick County, S.C., drill core samples as much as 300 feet below the collar elevation; figures in parentheses are powder-density values for the same samples and are not included in average.

SAMPLE TABLE B.—Lead consumption in the United States, by products, in 1969

[Data from U.S. Bureau of Mines Minerals Yearbook, 1971]

	Short tons
<b>Metal products:</b>	
Ammunition -----	79,233
Bearing metals -----	17,406
Brass and bronze -----	21,512
Cable covering -----	54,203
Casting metals -----	9,918
Caulking lead -----	44,857
Collapsible tubes -----	12,484
Foil -----	5,881
Pipes, traps, and bends -----	19,407
Sheet lead -----	25,818
Solder -----	72,626
Storage batteries:	
Battery grids and posts -----	280,386
Battery oxides -----	302,160
Terne metal -----	1,583
Type metal -----	25,660
Total -----	<u>973,134</u>
<b>Pigments:</b>	
White lead -----	6,617
Red lead and litharge -----	79,898
Pigment colors -----	14,670
Other -----	1,201
Total -----	<u>102,386</u>
<b>Chemicals:</b>	
Gasoline antiknock additive -----	271,128
Miscellaneous chemicals -----	602
Total -----	<u>271,730</u>
<b>Miscellaneous uses:</b>	
Annealing -----	4,252
Galvanizing -----	1,797
Lead plating -----	406
Weights and ballast -----	17,366
Total -----	<u>23,821</u>
Other, unclassified uses -----	18,287
Grand total <sup>1</sup> -----	<u>1,389,358</u>

<sup>1</sup> Includes lead that went directly from scrap to fabricated products.

SAMPLE TABLE C.—*Chemical analysis of*

[Results in milligrams per litre except as indicated. T, trace; Pres, present; &lt;0.1, less than 0.1; as

Borehole: Serial numbers are assigned by the Kenya Water Department to all boreholes in Kenya. The prefix, C-, should be added to all serial numbers listed in this table.

Date of collection: Month, day, and year of collection of sample.

Depth: In metres below land surface.

Temperature: Temperature of water, in degrees Celsius.

Specific conductance: In micromhos at 25° C.

Borehole	Date of collection	Depth	Temperature	pH	Specific conductance	Dissolved solids	Silica (SiO <sub>2</sub> )	Iron (Fe)	Manganese (Mn)	Calcium (Ca)	Magnesium (Mg)
<b>Mandera District</b>											
2570	9-6-56	41.5	---	8.7	-----	3,280	13	0.20	---	184	4
2570	9-26-61	41.5	---	7.3	5,300	4,080	25	.10	---	186	---
2571	11-13-56	41.8	---	6.9	-----	2,730	24	.40	---	174	152
2616	12-28-56	91.5	---	---	-----	4,070	36	T	---	314	255
3297	6-24-64	45.7	---	7.3	7,500	4,870	25	0	---	189	188
3569	3- -69	84.5	---	7.7	4,500	2,810	90	>.1	---	170	145
3571	4- -69	125.0	---	7.9	5,100	2,990	10	>.1	---	213	209
3572	4- -69	125.0	---	7.7	4,900	2,830	30	>.1	---	98	164
3696	10-10-70	122.0	---	7.7	4,100	2,870	100	0	---	194	136
3850	8-5-72	133.6	---	7.7	13,800	11,900	20	.20	---	628	475
3851	9-19-72	76.2	30.0	7.6	3,800	2,840	60	.20	---	192	122
3861	9-15-72	88.7	30.5	7.7	4,250	2,980	60	.30	---	211	144
3865	11-21-72	244.0	---	7.7	3,200	2,550	30	.10	0.10	120	64
<b>Wajir District</b>											
2643	2-4-57	122.0	---	7.8	-----	15,100	9	0.70	---	495	501
3041	7-1-60	175.4	---	8.1	-----	11,400	25	T	---	428	---
3110	2-14-61	140.3	---	7.1	1,150	730	45	<.1	---	70	47
3155	8-30-63	186.4	---	9.1	2,600	1,450	1	---	---	9	---
3218	3-13-63	143.9	---	7.5	1,100	765	35	0	---	27	---
3218	9-7-71	143.9	36.2	7.9	1,080	720	50	.20	0	27	18
3306	8-12-64	119.0	---	7.5	2,400	1,480	10	0	---	82	58
3306	8-12-64	145.5	---	7.5	2,400	1,540	10	0	---	90	67
3306	9-18-64	263.0	---	7.9	-----	3,750	---	0	---	309	118
3527	12-18-68	32.0	---	7.3	-----	4,250	8	T	---	135	---
3541	5-22-72	45.7	29.5	8.3	1,360	720	60	0	---	86	38
3549	4-20-70	45.7	---	7.8	1,200	1,460	60	.40	---	29	93
3654	8-25-71	134.2	36.2	8.4	1,080	740	50	.40	---	25	39
3655	5-23-70	120.2	34.0	7.7	1,000	795	35	.40	0	31	17
3656	1-31-70	20.4	---	7.8	650	472	110	>.1	>.01	15	57
3657	1-4-70	61.0	---	7.7	1,200	870	40	0	.01	61	42
3658	3-19-70	61.0	27.5	7.8	1,000	764	35	0	0	31	34
3685	8-6-70	108.3	34.0	7.8	1,200	920	60	>.01	0	19	25
3686	8-6-70	183.0	33.0	7.8	2,600	1,700	20	0	---	264	85
3687	8-26-70	121.7	36.7	8.0	700	420	25	.15	---	22	7
3715	2-20-71	136.9	---	7.7	700	480	40	.20	---	39	25
3726	7-11-72	140.0	---	9.0	2,050	1,290	5	.40	---	2	0
3727	5-26-71	144.3	---	7.7	750	545	20	.40	---	17	11
3769	8-25-71	132.1	---	7.5	4,500	2,750	30	0	---	12	31
3788	2-9-72	119.5	37.6	8.3	710	460	40	.10	---	30	25
3792	3-19-72	112.8	---	7.7	1,220	740	50	0	---	40	43
3811	4-1-72	128.7	---	7.5	15,500	11,000	15	.10	---	200	390
3820	5-28-72	128.7	37.5	7.4	820	535	30	0	---	30	14
3821	6-6-72	147.9	---	7.3	1,550	830	35	0	---	105	51
3828	6-26-72	224.2	---	7.7	12,600	10,800	10	.20	---	560	324
3880	2-19-73	76.2	---	7.3	20,600	15,800	50	0	---	1,780	1,330
3881	3-17-73	94.8	---	7.5	4,400	2,960	60	---	---	260	300
3891	2-24-73	32.9	---	8.4	1,240	824	50	.10	.04	48	53
3893	5-10-73	205.1	---	8.2	2,550	1,500	30	.10	---	7	6
3899	5-8-73	84.0	33.0	7.7	6,200	3,660	80	.30	.10	208	50
3914	5-23-73	149.3	---	6.9	5,500	3,190	10	.10	.30	110	10
3915	6-10-73	117.0	---	7.8	6,500	5,000	70	0	---	56	65
3917	6-22-73	205.3	---	7.8	9,500	8,800	20	0	0	285	410
3918	6-12-73	158.0	---	8.4	9,100	6,190	50	.5	.2	144	168
3931	8-21-73	152.0	---	7.3	4,200	2,650	20	.20	---	326	81
<b>Garissa District</b>											
2485	8-6-55	128.4	---	8.1	-----	720	4	0.3	---	---	---
2685	6-18-57	93.9	---	7.1	-----	710	26	1.5	---	71	45
2686	6-18-57	109.2	---	8.1	-----	805	13	1.5	---	---	---
2687	7-1-57	54.9	---	8.1	-----	22,100	10	.8	---	---	---
2718	8-24-57	78.1	---	7.5	-----	35,400	12	.7	---	315	437
2719	2-14-61	79.3	---	6.9	33,000	25,900	30	0	---	392	---
3033	7-26-60	134.2	---	7.9	-----	6,910	25	0	---	22	---
3038	7-26-60	101.5	---	7.3	-----	12,800	40	.2	---	126	---
3070	10-12-60	97.6	---	7.3	13,300	9,520	25	0	---	214	164
3085	12-12-60	128.1	---	7.5	1,550	1,040	25	.3	---	---	---
3120	3-13-61	70.4	---	7.1	1,430	1,200	35	0	---	157	62

*waters from boreholes, northeastern Kenya*

>0.1; more than 0.1 Analyses by Kenya Government Chemist's Department, Nairobi, except indicated]

Dissolved solids: Residue on evaporation at 180° C.

Aquifer: A, alluvial deposits of Quaternary age; P, semi-consolidated deposits (Merti Beds) of Pliocene age; M, consolidated sedimentary rocks of Mesozoic age; C, crystalline rocks of Precambrian age.

Remarks: S, analysis by British Petroleum-Shell Co., Ltd.

Sodium (Na)	Potassium (K)	Bicarbonate (HCO <sub>3</sub> )	Carbonate (CO <sub>3</sub> )	Sulfate (SO <sub>4</sub> )	Chloride (Cl)	Nitrate (NO <sub>3</sub> )	Nitrite (NO <sub>2</sub> )	Fluoride (F)	Hardness as CaCO <sub>3</sub>	Hardness non-carbonate	Aquifer	Remarks
<b>Mandera District—Continued</b>												
---	---	308	132	469	1,400	0	T	0.8	476	---	A	
---	---	---	---	646	1,770	0	0	---	1,100	---	A	
---	---	208	---	552	1,370	---	---	.7	1,060	---	A	
---	---	504	---	646	1,470	T	T	1.0	1,840	---	M	
1,180	30	---	---	816	2,050	0.3	0.01	.3	1,260	---	A	
475	19	258	0	323	1,060	222	.07	2.0	1,030	---	M	
470	40	238	0	533	1,630	.5	T	1.0	1,400	---	M	
590	56	380	0	440	1,080	100	.12	1.0	927	---	M	
560	20	329	0	347	1,190	71	.3	1.2	1,030	760	M	
2,160	143	234	0	4,200	4,140	20	.3	1.2	3,550	3,358	M	
490	24	351	0	192	1,030	155	.09	2.0	1,030	740	M	
535	26	342	0	347	1,160	177	.1	1.6	1,120	840	M	
508	13	342	0	960	220	6.2	T	1.1	566	286	M	
<b>Wajir District—Continued</b>												
---	---	200	---	1,415	8,170	T	T	1.2	3,300	---	P	
---	---	---	---	572	6,080	0.6	0.09	1.8	2,970	---	P	
---	---	---	---	42	148	42	2.0	2.5	350	35	P	
455	36	---	---	123	690	3.8	1.4	8.2	210	---	P	
220	---	---	---	56	88	.4	0	1.0	210	---	P	
240	16	---	---	55	67	0	.01	1.1	218	---	P	
333	45	---	---	85	644	27.5	2.3	1.1	445	---	P	
333	45	---	---	92	644	27.5	5.5	1.0	500	---	P	
860	44	---	---	73	2,010	38	.06	1.3	1,240	---	P	
---	---	128	---	76	2,170	---	---	.6	2,380	---	C	
158	11	356	29	40	174	62	.30	1.8	340	32	C	
109	3.5	674	0	56	248	10	<.03	4.7	456	0	C	
190	16	617	65	59	67	0	.03	1.2	224	0	P	
184	13	586	0	47	100	2.2	.03	2.3	148	0	P	
30	10	366	0	---	18	22	.3	---	276	0	A	
120	4	374	0	89	144	7.8	<.03	3.64	324	0	C	
100	4	340	0	88	120	3.3	<.03	1.62	296	0	C	
320	20	586	0	105	109	22	.03	1.6	152	0	P	
190	13	493	0	263	510	39	.3	1.7	1,010	608	M	
96	11	390	0	43	34	.6	0	.4	83	0	P	
102	11	440	0	24	64	1.0	.01	.7	204	0	P	
490	8	932	118	24	150	0	.03	4.2	6	0	P	
174	7	478	0	30	50	0	0	1.4	88	0	P	
880	17	644	0	192	816	0	.07	1.9	160	0	P	
100	15	344	29	21	40	.4	.01	.7	182	0	P	
176	21	512	48	55	140	4.4	0	.4	280	0	C	
2,740	34	220	0	467	5,200	199	.4	.7	2,124	1,940	P	
132	13	434	0	19	58	0	0	.7	170	0	P	
104	16	371	0	31	256	24	.04	2.2	304	170	P	
1,544	42	268	0	2,567	3,900	0	.7	1.5	2,750	2,530	M	
1,440	65	106	0	600	7,500	443	.1	.9	10,000	9,890	C	
300	33	403	0	168	1,120	443	.02	1.1	1,900	1,570	C	
170	2	444	34	59	150	8.8	.03	1.3	340	0	C	
524	16	508	2.4	183	576	3.5	0	1.2	44	0	P	
386	47	417	0	109	1,480	354	.1	1.3	724	382	C	
755	15	93	0	24	1,920	.4	.1	1.0	314	238	M	
1,200	116	486	24	267	2,850	0	.01	.7	2,420	0	P	
1,690	143	347	4.8	700	4,600	133	.15	1.0	1,060	2,130	C	
1,300	82	547	34	563	2,800	61	.1	2.8	1,150	556	C	
350	35	229	0	493	980	354	.2	.5	188	966	C	
<b>Garissa District—Continued</b>												
---	---	470	---	25	94	T	T	0.7	60	8	P	
---	---	400	---	31	142	T	T	3.0	362	34	P	
---	---	660	---	25	65	0	T	1.8	40	---	P	
---	---	1,330	---	1,580	11,400	T	T	9.4	80	---	P	
---	---	610	---	2,450	11,900	0	T	15.2	2,580	2,080	P	
---	---	---	---	2,430	12,900	6.6	0	3.3	2,800	---	P	
---	---	---	---	671	3,180	16.0	1.2	2.3	390	---	P	
---	---	---	---	2,130	5,500	0	0	1.1	985	---	P	S
---	---	---	---	1,360	4,410	0	0	1.6	1,210	---	P	S
---	---	---	---	107	164	0	0	2.0	80	---	P	
---	---	---	---	499	122	0	0	2.5	650	---	P	S

SAMPLE TABLE D.—*Chemical analyses of water from typical middle-zone boreholes, Chad Basin, Nigeria*

[Results in parts per million except as indicated]

Constituents	Mbutta, Mafa District GSN 1648 <sup>1</sup>	Laraba, Gubio District GSN 1992 <sup>1</sup>	Garunda, Kanembu District GSN 2083 <sup>1</sup>	Nyau, Kanembu District GSN 2091 <sup>1</sup>	Sabsawa, Nganzei District GSN 1984 <sup>1</sup>	Shuari, Mafa District GSN 1643 <sup>2</sup>	Kauwa, Kanembu District GSN 3020 <sup>2</sup>	Ngala, Ngala District GSN 1996 <sup>2</sup>	Dalori, Konduga District GSN 2274 <sup>2</sup>
Silica (SiO <sub>2</sub> ) -----	48	67	69	63	52	109	65	66	66
Aluminum (Al) -----	Trace	Trace	Trace	Trace	.03	Trace	.1	.1	.1
Copper (Cu) -----	---	---	---	---	---	---	.02	0	.04
Iron (Fe) -----	.18	1.5	1.3	1.3	.6	.1	4.5	<sup>3</sup> .25	<sup>3</sup> 7.0
Manganese (Mn) -----	1.0	8.5	4.2	2.5	1.0	2.4	1.4	.55	1.2
Calcium (Ca) -----	19	64	51	45	7	25	50	8	14
Magnesium (Mg) -----	4.0	37	23	20	3.7	19	22	4.1	6.8
Sodium (Na) -----	85	192	180	188	70	141	243	176	76
Potassium (K) -----	16	23	18	19	13	18	18	9	14
Bicarbonate (HCO <sub>3</sub> ) -----	183	170	237	243	160	268	295	354	---
Sulfate (SO <sub>4</sub> ) -----	61	449	320	319	43	180	368	83	29
Chloride (Cl) -----	32	112	88	88	23	41	71	34	10
Fluoride (F) -----	.3	.6	.6	.6	.10	.2	---	---	---
Nitrate (NO <sub>3</sub> ) -----	.6	0	13.3	13.3	.4	6.6	0	.8	.1
Dissolved solids, residue on evaporation -----	536	1,065	890	885	288	678	955	543	<sup>3</sup> 334
Hardness as CaCO <sub>3</sub> -----	72	320	230	205	35	148	216	37	63
Free CO <sub>2</sub> -----	---	125	95	85	40	115	<sup>3</sup> 95	<sup>3</sup> 76	<sup>3</sup> 95
Specific conductance, micromhos at 25°C -----	400	1,300	1,085	800	340	800	1,300	775	425
pH -----	6.6	6.2	6.4	6.4	6.4	6.3	<sup>3</sup> 6.5	<sup>3</sup> 6.7	<sup>3</sup> 7.3
Sodium adsorption ratio (SAR) -----	4.7	4.7	5.3	5.9	5.3	5.2	<sup>3</sup> 7.3	<sup>3</sup> 12.8	<sup>3</sup> 4.1
Oxidation-reduction poten- tial (Eh) -----	---	---	---	---	---	---	<sup>3</sup> -79	<sup>3</sup> -39.5	<sup>3</sup> -163

<sup>1</sup> Analyzed by Geol. Survey of Nigeria Lab., Kaduna, Nigeria.<sup>2</sup> Analyzed by U.S. Geol. Survey lab., Washington, D.C.<sup>3</sup> Field determinations by Frank E. Clarke, U.S. Geol. Survey.

SAMPLE TABLE E.—Principal sources and some potential sources of high-calcium limestone in the United States

Geologic age	Stratigraphic unit	Principal areas of occurrence of high-calcium limestone
<b>Eastern and Central United States</b>		
Tertiary	Ocala Limestone	Northwestern peninsula, Florida.
Pennsylvanian	Vanport Limestone (also a member of the Alleghany Formation).	Western Pennsylvania, northern West Virginia, eastern Ohio.
Mississippian	Greenbrier Limestone	Northern West Virginia, southwestern Virginia.
	Bangor Limestone	Northern Alabama, northern Georgia.
	Maxville Limestone	Eastern Ohio.
	Ste. Genevieve Limestone	Eastern Tennessee, northern Alabama, Kentucky, Indiana.
	Girkin Formation (formerly Gasper Formation).	Western Kentucky, northern Alabama.
	St. Louis Limestone	Missouri, Illinois.
	Salem Limestone	Southern Indiana.
	Warsaw Limestone	Southern Indiana, Kentucky, northern Alabama.
Devonian	Boone Formation	Northern Arkansas.
	Helderberg Group	New York.
	Jeffersonville Limestone	Kentucky, southern Indiana.
	Traverse Formation, as used by Shaver and others (1970), or Group.	Michigan, Indiana.
	Cedar Valley Limestone as used by Thiel and Schwartz (1941).	Southeastern Minnesota.
	Rogers City Formation	Northeastern Michigan.
	Dundee Formation	Do.
Ordovician	Columbus Limestone	North-central Ohio.
	Holston Limestone	Eastern Tennessee, southwestern Virginia.
	New Market Limestone	Southwestern Virginia.
	Newala Limestone	Northern Alabama.
	Valentine Member of Curtin Limestone of Kay (1943).	Central Pennsylvania.
	Anville Limestone	Southeastern Pennsylvania.
	Trenton Limestone	New York.
	Galena Dolomite and Platteville Limestone.	Minnesota, Illinois, Wisconsin.
Cambrian	Tomstown Formation	Panhandle of West Virginia.
<b>Western United States</b>		
Quaternary	Shell beds	Southern California coast and Texas coast.
Tertiary	Sierra Blanca Limestone	Southwestern California.
	Vaqueros Formation	Do.
	Martinez Formation	Do.
Cretaceous	Mural Limestone	Southeastern Arizona.
	Edwards Limestone	Central and western Texas.
Tertiary to Jurassic	Franciscan Formation and metamorphic rocks of nearly equivalent age (limestone occurs as lenticular bodies).	Coastal Range and California and southwestern Oregon.
Jurassic (?)	Limestone of Kings River area.	Southern Alaska.
Triassic	Limestone of Snake River area.	Southwestern Idaho.
Triassic and Permian	Isolated limestone deposits.	Northeastern Oregon.
Permian	Ingleside Formation	North-central Colorado.
Permian to Mississippian	White Knob Limestone and Wells Formation.	Southeastern Idaho.
Carboniferous (?)	Oro Grande Formation	Central southern California.
Pennsylvanian or Mississippian.	Limestone lenses in metasediments.	Southwestern Oregon.
Mississippian	Madison Group	Western parts of Montana, Wyoming, and Colorado; southeastern Idaho, and northeastern Utah.

[Absence of cross rule at bottom indicates table is continued to next page. "Do." is capitalized in first and last columns if used in table, lowercased in any other column]

SAMPLE TABLE E.—*Principal sources and some potential sources of high-calcium limestone in the United States—Continued*

Geologic age	Stratigraphic unit	Principal areas of occurrence of high-calcium limestone
<b>Western United States—Continued</b>		
Mississippian—Continued	Escabrosa Limestone	Southeastern Arizona.
	Redwell Limestone	Northern Arizona.
Devonian	Crystal Pass Limestone	Southern Nevada.
	Member of the Sultan Limestone.	
Silurian	St. Clair Limestone	Central and eastern Oklahoma.
	Heceta Limestone	Southeastern Alaska.
Ordovician	Fernvale Limestone	Central and eastern Oklahoma.
Cambrian	Meagher Limestone	Western Montana.
Paleozoic (undifferentiated).	Limestone of Pico Blanco	Southern coast of California.

## References

Jenkinson, B. L., 1949, Bureau of the Census manual of tabular presentation: U.S. Bureau of the Census, 266 p.

"This manual is devoted largely to an outline of theory and practice in the presentation of statistical data in tables for publication, illustrated by specific examples throughout. The emphasis is placed upon principles, rather than rules \* \* \*" (p. ix) in order to provide flexibility. The tabular style differs somewhat from GPO and Survey tabular styles, but the book contains much useful technical information and all needed definitions of tabular terms.

U.S. Government Printing Office, 1973, Style manual; Washington, 548 p.

University of Chicago Press, 1969, A manual of style (12th ed., revised): Chicago, 546 p.

## NUMERALS

The recommendations listed below for use of numerals are either quoted from or based on the 1967 edition of the GPO style manual (p. 169–174), except as shown. Different editions of the manual have given somewhat different numeral-usage rules, but those of the 1967 edition generally seem to involve fewer problems in the way of exceptions to basic usages.

Most rules for the use of numerals are based on the general principle that the reader understands Arabic numerals more readily than Roman numerals or numerical word expressions, particularly in technical, scientific, or statistical matter. Some general rules follow.

1. Arabic numerals are preferable to Roman numerals.
2. Figures are used in text for both cardinal and ordinal numbers of "10" or more except for the first word of the sentence; most sentences can be so worded as not to begin with a number. Numbers under "10" are to be spelled out except for serial numbers and expressions of time, measurement, and money.

Only four companies in the metals group appear on the list, though the 1970 census shows at least 4,400 establishments.

U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1 was published in 1883.  
 Petroleum came from 16 fields, eight of which were in two States.  
 Each of the five girls earned \$2 an hour.  
 A team of four men ran the 1-mile relay in 3 minutes and 20 seconds.  
 Ten percent of the population owns 70 percent of the wealth.  
 First Congress; 82d Congress; 38th parallel; 141st meridian; first parallel

3. Fractions that are part of unit modifiers or that are joined to whole numbers are expressed in figures; fractions that stand alone are spelled out.

one-eighth, three-fourths  
 $3\frac{1}{2}$ ,  $1\frac{3}{4}$  (but  $\frac{1}{2}$  to  $1\frac{3}{4}$  pages)  
 $\frac{1}{2}$ -inch pipe,  $\frac{7}{8}$ -point rise, 0.9-inch spacing

4. Two sets of numbers should not be written in immediate succession. Instead of "The final survey makes the total distance of levels run in 1906 38,307 miles," write "The total distance of levels run in 1906 was 38,307 miles," or some other variation.

5. Indefinite expressions are spelled out. The words "nearly," "about," "around," "approximately" do not constitute indefinite expressions (GPO SM, 1973, p. 184).

a hundred wells; nearly 100 wells; 115 wells

6. In text, "million" and higher orders are spelled out as illustrated.

\$12 million (not \$12,000,000), but \$12,649,042  
 \$2.75 billion; \$2,750 million; \$2 $\frac{3}{4}$  billion  
 \$500,000 to \$1 million  
 4 million years, but 400,000 years

7. In Survey reports, dates are usually written as shown below.

March 3, 1879, is the official birthday of the U.S. Geological Survey.  
 (Note comma after year.)

March 6 to April 15, 1975 (not March 6, 1975, to April 15, 1975); April 1975

For consecutive years, water years, fiscal years, and meteorological years, the contracted forms 1974-75, 1890-91, 1916-27, 1907-8 (but 1900-1901, 1895-1902) are used.

8. The following rules for use or omission of the comma in numbers are taken from the 1973 edition of the GPO style manual (p. 137):

- a. The comma is used to separate thousands, millions, and higher numbers of four or more digits. Thus: 4,320; 50,491; 1,250,000.
- b. The comma is omitted in built-up fractions, in decimals, and in serial numbers except patent numbers.

$1/2500$

1.0947

page 2632

1721-1727 St. Clair Avenue

Executive Order 11242

motor No. 189463

1450 kilocycles; 1100 meters (no comma unless more than four digits radio only)

## Reference

U.S. Government Printing Office, 1967, Style manual, 512 p.; 1973, 548 p.: Washington.

## QUOTATIONS

The author is obligated to quote only the exact words of the reference, not the typographical or compositional style (that is, the indentation, the larger or smaller type, the spacing), and there is no obligation to reproduce antiquated or incorrect spelling, capitalization, punctuation, and grammar except on the rare occasions when quaintness of form is to be preserved. Reproduction of incorrect spelling or grammar with the disclaiming "sic" is distracting to the reader and condescending to the original writer. It is no blot on the bright shield of scientific integrity to change a quoted inappropriate "is" to "are." If the author's conscience troubles him about such, he can write: "As Jones (1903, p. 462) stated, 'The limestone exposed on the hill and the bedrock in the area [are] \* \* \*.'" It may be noted that present-day quotations from Chaucer, Shakespeare, and all the classicists of antiquity are much punctuated, much capitalized, and much re-spelled from their "original" versions.

"British English" and "American English" differ slightly in spelling, capitalization, and other features. A direct quotation from a foreign author should not be changed to conform to "American English," but with this exception most American journals and publishers, including the Survey, routinely change "British" to "American" usage. By the same token, an author who publishes in a journal outside the United States should expect to find his usage changed to conform to local customs.

Text changes in either direction may occasionally cause slight discrepancies between text and map explanations. Consistency between the two is highly desirable but, if expediency dictates that different usage be allowed to stand in the illustrations, most readers will be able to jump the hurdle from "colour" to "color" or from "dyke" to "dike."

Omissions in quoted matter are indicated by three asterisks (as preferred in GPO style manual), rather than by three periods as some editorial styles prefer. Quotations from foreign languages are usually translated into English; if presentation of the material in its original language is desirable, both the original and a translation should be given.

## ITALICS

Use of italic type (indicated in manuscript by underscoring), should generally be reserved for:

1. Formal names of genera, species, and subspecies or varieties of plants and animals, as *Productus*, *Inoceramus fragilis*, *Ostrea congesta* Conrad, *Bulimina elongata subulata*. Names of families and higher groups are printed in Roman: Brachiopoda, Mollusca, Foraminifera.
2. Letter symbols in mathematical equations and most letter symbols used in physics. Chemical symbols, even in italic matter, are printed in Roman.
3. *See* and *See also* in indexes, glossaries, and like matter
4. Names of individual aircraft, spacecraft, and marine vessels:

The Apollo 15 lunar module *Falcon* \* \* \*; the command module *Endeavor* \* \* \*.

The successful completion of the mission of the B-29 Superfortress *Enola Gay* brought the Japanese representatives to the battleship *Missouri*.

The *Eagle* has landed.

The Skylab Earth Resources Experimental Package (EREP) high-density digital tapes \* \* \*.

ERTS (Landsat) multispectral images have a variety of geological applications.

The U.S. Geological Survey research vessel *Don J. Miller* \* \* \*.

In general, italics are not used for emphasis in Survey publications. Many devices other than italicization are available for indicating needed emphasis: boldface type for glossary items, run-in or vertical numbering for series items, indentation or change of type size for quoted matter. Variation from usual punctuation or from usual word, phrase, or sentence order has infinite possibilities for attaining emphasis.

## ABBREVIATIONS, SIGNS, AND SYMBOLS

Some abbreviations, signs, and symbols that are used in Survey reports under certain conditions are listed at the end of this section. The standard Survey format when using abbreviations is to enclose the spelled-out form in parentheses the first time the abbreviation is used in the text and in the abstract, as "\* \* \* ANL (Argonne National Laboratory) \* \* \*"; thereafter "ANL" only. In some papers, it may be more convenient or natural to give the spelled-out term first and the abbreviation in parentheses after the spelled-out term.

Many abbreviations are so widely known that they need not be defined. Among these are the abbreviations for common units of measure preceded by a numeral (such as "ft," "in.," "m"), common bibliographic terms ("fig(s).," "pl(s).," "no(s).," "p.," and others), com-

monly used abbreviations such as "a.m.," "p.m.," "Jr.," "Sr.," "A.D.," and "B.C.," and common arithmetic and chemical abbreviations. (Note: We are sometimes using "abbreviations" loosely to include "signs" and "symbols"; the distinctions in the three terms are somewhat hazy.)

Instead of defining the terms in text, an author may follow an alternative procedure of placing just after the table of contents a glossary with needed definitions. A third procedure is to include in the glossary only signs and symbols and to define the abbreviations in text. Any of these procedures is acceptable so long as consistency of format and usage is maintained and meanings are clear. Remember, though, that the abstract must be independently intelligible.

To abbreviate or not to abbreviate is to some extent a matter of choice and judgment; "when in doubt, spell it out" is a good maxim to follow. A word or phrase used only a few times in a paper probably would not be abbreviated, but the same word or phrase used frequently would be shortened. In general, the more technical the paper the more appropriate will be abbreviations. Abbreviations are used freely in tables, which have rigid space limitations; such abbreviations should be defined in a headnote if they have not been defined earlier in the report. Matter in parentheses or footnotes is usually shortened as much as possible in order to avoid interrupting the main thought; the author probably would write "On page 64, Smith (1972) says that \* \* \*," but "Smith (1972, p. 64) says that \* \* \*."

In addition to the approved terms listed, the author may occasionally find it desirable to set up and define arbitrary abbreviations for his particular paper. However, little space is saved by abbreviations, and abbreviations unique to a particular paper may be especially confusing to the reader.

Many compilations of abbreviations are available, though no two follow exactly the same style, and so may be more confusing than enlightening. The three publications listed below are only a few of such dictionaries in print.

1. A 36-page "Scientific and Technical Abbreviations," which includes symbols, was edited and published in 1970 by the John F. Holman Company, of Washington, D.C.
2. In the same year, Bowker of New York published the second edition of Paul Spillner's "World Guide to Abbreviations," a three-volume "list of more than 50,000 abbreviations with an internal bibliography of dictionaries of abbreviations." The three volumes contain a total of 1,295 pages.
3. The "New Fourth International Edition" of "Abbreviations Dictionary," by Ralph De Sola, was published in 1974 by American Elsevier Publishing Company of New York. It includes "abbreviations, acronyms, anonyms, contractions, initials and nicknames, short form and slang short cuts, signs and symbols." The dictionary has 428 pages.

In general, abbreviations for scientific terms and for terms of measurement are not followed by periods; a period is used with the abbreviation for "inch (es)" to avoid confusion with "in" used as a preposition or adverb.

Some preferred usages, mostly excerpted or reworded from the GPO style manual or from earlier editions of STA, follow.

### Geographic terms

1. "United States" is abbreviated when it precedes "Government" or the name of a Government organization. Except for U.S.S.R. or SSSR, names of foreign countries are not abbreviated.

British, French, and United States Governments

U.S. Government

U.S. Department of the Interior

2. The State names Alaska, Hawaii, Idaho, Iowa, Maine, Ohio, and Utah are not abbreviated except in postal addresses. The names of trust territories and insular possessions and localities, except as noted in "3" below are also not abbreviated.

Catalina Island

Island of Tutuila

Johnston Atoll

Long Island

U.S. Trust Territory of the

Pacific Islands

3. Names of States not listed in "2" above and of Canal Zone, Puerto Rico, and Virgin Islands are abbreviated immediately following any capitalized term. These names are spelled out after a lower-cased word.

Charlotte Amalie, V.I.

Cleburne County, Ark.

Ely Mining District, Nev.

Friendship Airport, Md.

Hima Quadrangle, Ky.

Panhandle Gas Field, Tex.

Richmond, Va.

St. Lawrence County magnetite  
district, New York

San Juan, P.R.

San Juan Mountains, Colo.

San Nicolas Island, Calif.

Savannah River Basin, Ga.

Tacoma area, Washington

Taconic region, New York

4. The following abbreviations are preferred by GPO and by the Geological Survey. Note that some names are not abbreviated, except for two-letter Postal Service abbreviations that are normally used only with "ZIP code" mailing addresses.

<i>Name</i>	<i>Abbreviation</i>	<i>Postal Service</i>
Alabama	Ala.	AL
Alaska	Alaska	AK
Arizona	Ariz.	AZ
Arkansas	Ark.	AR
California	Calif.	CA
Colorado	Colo.	CO
Connecticut	Conn.	CT
Delaware	Del.	DE
Florida	Fla.	FL

Georgia	Ga.	GA
Hawaii	Hawaii	HI
Idaho	Idaho	ID
Illinois	Ill.	IL
Indiana	Ind.	IN
Iowa	Iowa	IA
Kansas	Kans.	KS
Kentucky	Ky.	KY
Louisiana	La.	LA
Maine	Maine	ME
Maryland	Md.	MD
Massachusetts	Mass.	MA
Michigan	Mich.	MI
Minnesota	Minn.	MN
Mississippi	Miss.	MS
Missouri	Mo.	MO
Montana	Mont.	MT
Nebraska	Nebr.	NE
Nevada	Nev.	NV
New Hampshire	N.H.	NH
New Jersey	N.J.	NJ
New Mexico	N. Mex.	NM
New York	N.Y.	NY
North Carolina	N.C.	NC
North Dakota	N. Dak.	ND
Ohio	Ohio	OH
Oklahoma	Okla.	OK
Oregon	Oreg.	OR
Pennsylvania	Pa.	PA
Rhode Island	R.I.	RI
South Carolina	S.C.	SC
South Dakota	S. Dak.	SD
Tennessee	Tenn.	TN
Texas	Tex.	TX
Utah	Utah	UT
Vermont	Vt.	VT
Virginia	Va.	VA
Washington	Wash.	WA
West Virginia	W. Va.	WV
Wisconsin	Wis.	WI
Wyoming	Wyo.	WY
Canal Zone	C.Z.	CZ
District of Columbia	D.C.	DC
Guam	Guam	GU
Puerto Rico	P.R.	PR
Virgin Islands	V.I.	VI

5. "Street" or "Avenue" as part of a name is not abbreviated.

14th Street Bridge

Ninth Avenue Freeway

## Descriptions of tracts of land

1. In the description of tracts of public land the following abbreviations are used (periods are omitted after abbreviated compass directions that immediately precede and close up on figures):

SE $\frac{1}{4}$ NW $\frac{1}{4}$  sec. 4, T. 12 S., R. 15 E., of the Boise Meridian

lot 6, NE $\frac{1}{4}$  sec. 4, T. 6 N., R. 1 W.

N $\frac{1}{2}$  sec. 20, T. 7 N., R. 2 W., Sixth Principal Meridian

Tps. 9, 10, 11., and 12 S., Rs. 12 and 13 W.

T. 2 S., Rs. 8, 9, and 10 E., sec. 26

T. 3 S., R. 1 E., sec. 34, W $\frac{1}{2}$ E $\frac{1}{2}$ , W $\frac{1}{2}$ , and W $\frac{1}{2}$ SE $\frac{1}{4}$ SE $\frac{1}{4}$  sec. 32 (with or without a township number)

2. If fractions are spelled out in land descriptions, "half" and "quarter" are used (not "one-half" nor "one-quarter").

south half of T. 47 N., R. 64 E.

## Names and titles

1. "Railroad" and "Railway" are abbreviated in tables and in parentheses (as "Santa Fe Ry.," "Union Pacific RR."); preference between the two words follows the usage of the individual company.
2. A military title is usually abbreviated if followed by a given name or initial: "Col. H. M. Smith furnished data on the wells," but "Colonel Smith furnished \* \* \*." The titles "Senator," "Congressman," and "Representative" are not abbreviated.

## Dates

1. Names of months followed by the day, or day and year, are usually abbreviated in tables and in parentheses. In narrow columns of tables, the names of months may be abbreviated even if standing alone. Otherwise the form used in Survey reports is "January 1, 1976."
2. The two epochs of the Gregorian calendar are indicated by "A.D.," meaning "anno Domini" (in the year of our Lord), and "B.C.," (before Christ).

A.D. 937

254 B.C.

3. Glacial and other geologic events may be expressed as an approximate number of years "B.P." (before present).

10,000 B.P.

## Time

1. Use "a.m. ('ante meridiem')," "p.m. ('post meridiem')," and "m. ('meridiem,' meaning 'noon') with figures denoting clock time.

3:30 p.m.

1 a.m.

12 m.

12 p.m. (meaning "midnight")

2. If it is necessary to specify the time zone, the four conterminous U.S. zones are well enough known to Survey readers to be abbreviated as "e.s.t.," "c.s.t.," "m.s.t.," and "P.s.t." (or "e.d.t.," "c.d.t.," "m.d.t.," and "P.d.t."). Other zones should be spelled out, at least the first time used.

10 p.m. P.d.t.  
 1400 c.s.t. (for 24-hour time)  
 2:16 a.m. Bering standard time

### Miscellaneous

1. The words "latitude" and "longitude" followed by figures are abbreviated, and the figures are closed up.

lat 52°33'05" N., long 13°21'10" E.

2. In citations of publications, "number" is abbreviated and lower-cased. Elsewhere the abbreviation is capitalized.

Chemical Notes, v. 10, no. 41  
 Of all the specimens examined, No. 4297 most clearly illustrated  
 the \* \* \*

3. The degree mark should be used with figures in statements of dips and strikes, and the term of direction should be abbreviated.

dip of 10° SE., or 10° S. 35° E.  
 strike of N. 55° E., or N. 45°-70° E.  
 N. 55°30'25" E.

But terms of direction should be spelled out unless figures are given: "The dip is southeast."

4. In tables, use "Do." (capitalized) in first and last columns for "ditto," "do." in other columns.
5. Over a stratigraphic figure column use "Meters," "M," "(m)," "Feet," "Ft In," "(feet)," or "(ft in)," according to the content of the column, to whether the term stands by itself or follows another term such as "Thickness," and to the amount of space available.
6. The English units of measure in unit modifiers are generally not abbreviated.

½-inch pipe	30-foot well
10-pound weight	0.9-inch bed

But as the metric units come into general use, economy of space may dictate abbreviation of the longer words.

10-km contour	20-cm <sup>3</sup> volume
5-ml solution	

## *Some abbreviations, signs, and symbols used in Survey reports*

Compiled by ANNA MAY ORELLANA

[For abbreviations for stratigraphic terms, see sections on "Illustrations" (p. 54) and "Stratigraphic Nomenclature and Description" (p. 148); for normative minerals and groups, see section on "Petrologic Terminology" (p. 168); for chemical elements, see section on "Chemical Terminology" (p. 171)]

absolute_____abs	angular frequency_____ω
absolute value of_____	angular velocity_____ω
absorbance_____A	anhydrous_____anhyd
absorptivity_____a	anno Domini (in the year of our Lord)_____A.D.
absorptivity, molar_____ε	annual_____ann.
abstract(s)_____abs.	ante meridiem (before noon)_____a.m.
academy_____acad.	anthropological_____anthropol.
acceleration, angular_____α	antilogarithm_____antilog
acceleration, linear_____a	appendix_____app.
account_____acct.	applied_____appl.
acre-foot_____acre-ft	approaches_____→
activity, chemical (absolute)_____λ	approximate (ly)_____approx
activity, chemical (relative)_____a	approximately identical with_____≈
activity coefficient_____γ	approximately (nearly) equal to_____≈
acute accent_____´	April_____Apr.
administration, administrative_____adm.	aqueous_____aq
affinis_____aff.	archeological_____archeol.
agricultural_____agr.	area_____A or S
alkylbenzenesulfonate_____ABS	article (s)_____art.
alternating current_____ac	association_____assoc.
alternating-current (unit modifier)_____a-c	asterisk_____*
altitude_____alt, h	astronomic(al)_____astron.
American_____Am.	astronomical unit (in English)_____AU
American Chemical Society_____ACS	asymptotically equal to_____∞
American Geological Institute_____AGI	Atlantic standard time_____A.s.t.
American Geophysical Union_____AGU	Atlantic time_____A.t.
American National Standards Institute_____ANSI	atmosphere_____atm
American Petroleum Institute_____API	atomic mass_____m <sub>a</sub> or m
American Society for Testing and Materials_____ASTM	atomic mass of species X_____m(X) or m <sub>X</sub>
ammonium dihydrogen phos- phate_____ADP	atomic number_____at. no., Z
ampere_____A	atomic number of species X_____Z(X) or Z <sub>X</sub>
analytic (al)_____anal.	atomic weight_____at. wt., M
analytical variability_____ξ <sub>a</sub>	atomic weight of species X_____M(X) or M <sub>X</sub>
angle_____∠	atto (prefix)_____a
angle between_____∧	August_____Aug.
angle between a <sub>0</sub> and b <sub>0</sub> in the unit cell_____γ	automatic data processing_____ADP
angle between a <sub>0</sub> and c <sub>0</sub> in the unit cell_____β	auxiliary_____aux.
angle between b <sub>0</sub> and c <sub>0</sub> in the unit cell_____α	Avenue (in addresses only)_____Ave.
angle between the two optic axes of a biaxial mineral_____2V	average_____avg
angstrom_____A	average (indicated by bar or vinculum over symbol or by angular parentheses)_____—, ( )
	Avogadro's number_____N or N <sub>A</sub>
	avoiddupois_____avdp

- azimuth\_\_\_az or  $\alpha$   
 bachelor of arts\_\_\_B.A. or A.B.  
 bachelor of science\_\_\_B.S. or S.B.  
 barn (area)\_\_\_b  
 barometer\_\_\_bar.  
 barrel\_\_\_bbl  
 base of natural logarithms\_\_\_e  
 Baumé (used with degree)\_\_\_Bé  
 because\_\_\_∴  
 becquerel\_\_\_Bq  
 before Christ\_\_\_B.C.  
 before present\_\_\_B.P.  
 bench mark (in illustrations)\_\_\_BM  
 bench mark (in text)\_\_\_B.M.  
  
 benzene ring\_\_\_  
  
 Bernoulli number\_\_\_B  
 Bessel function (first kind, zero order)\_\_\_ $J_0(x)$   
 Bessel function, hyperbolic (first kind, zero order)\_\_\_ $I_0(x)$   
 bias\_\_\_ $\delta$   
 bibliographic (al)\_\_\_bibliog.  
 biennial\_\_\_bienn.  
 billion years\_\_\_b.y.  
 binary coded decimal\_\_\_BCD  
 biochemical oxygen demand\_\_\_BOD  
 biographic (al)\_\_\_biog.  
 biologic (al)\_\_\_biol.  
 Bohr magneton\_\_\_ $\mu_B$   
 boiling point\_\_\_bp  
 boldface\_\_\_bf.  
 bolle (for example, Å in Swedish alphabet)\_\_\_°  
 Boltzmann constant\_\_\_k  
 Boltzmann function\_\_\_H  
 botanic (al)\_\_\_bot.  
 bottom withdrawal tube\_\_\_BW-tube  
 Boulevard (in addresses only)\_\_\_Blvd.  
 braces\_\_\_{ }  
 brackets\_\_\_[ ]  
 Bragg angle, glancing angle ( $2\theta$  is twice the glancing angle in X-ray diffraction)\_\_\_ $\theta$   
 breadth (width)\_\_\_b or B  
 breve\_\_\_˘  
 Brinell hardness number\_\_\_Bhn  
 British thermal unit\_\_\_Btu  
 Brother (s) (commercial)\_\_\_Bro (s).  
 building (s)\_\_\_bldg (s).  
 bushel\_\_\_bu  
 calculated\_\_\_calc  
 calorie\_\_\_cal  
 candela\_\_\_cd  
 capacitance\_\_\_C  
 carat\_\_\_kt  
 caret\_\_\_^  
 caron\_\_\_ˇ
- Cartesian coordinates\_\_\_x, y, z  
 catalog\_\_\_cat.  
 cathode ray\_\_\_CR  
 cathode ray tube\_\_\_CRT  
 cedilla\_\_\_¸  
 Celsius\_\_\_C  
 centi (prefix)\_\_\_c  
 centimeter\_\_\_cm  
 centimeter-gram-second (system)\_\_\_CGS  
 centimeter-gram-second (unit)\_\_\_cgs  
 central daylight time\_\_\_c.d.t.  
 central standard time\_\_\_c.s.t.  
 central time\_\_\_c.t.  
 chapter\_\_\_chap.  
 chemical\_\_\_chem.  
 chemical oxygen demand\_\_\_COD  
 chemical potential\_\_\_ $\mu$   
 chi-square statistic\_\_\_ $\chi^2$   
 circa (about)\_\_\_ca.  
 circle\_\_\_○  
 circular (shape)\_\_\_cir  
 circumflex\_\_\_^  
 citrate-extractable heavy metal\_\_\_cxHM  
 class\_\_\_cl.  
 classification\_\_\_classn.  
 coefficient\_\_\_coef  
 cold-extractable copper\_\_\_cxCu  
 collection (s) (used only with numbers)\_\_\_colln (s).  
 college\_\_\_coll.  
 cologarithm\_\_\_colog  
 column\_\_\_col.  
 commission, committee\_\_\_comm.  
 common business oriented language\_\_\_Cobol  
 communication (s)\_\_\_commun.  
 Company (commercial)\_\_\_Co.  
 comparative\_\_\_comp.  
 compound\_\_\_compd.  
 compressibility\_\_\_ $\kappa$   
 concentrate\_\_\_conc  
 concentrated\_\_\_concd  
 concentration\_\_\_concn or c  
 conductance\_\_\_G  
 conductivity\_\_\_cond or  $\gamma$   
 confer (to be compared to)\_\_\_cf.  
 conference\_\_\_conf.  
 confidence limit, lower, for the population mean\_\_\_ $\mu_L$   
 confidence limit, upper, for the population mean\_\_\_ $\mu_U$   
 Congress, Congressional\_\_\_Cong.  
 conservation\_\_\_conserv.  
 consolidated\_\_\_consol.  
 constant\_\_\_const  
 constant as defined in text\_\_\_K  
 continued\_\_\_con.  
 contribution (s)\_\_\_contr.

control of electromagnetic radiation  
(civil defense) ----conelrad  
cooperation, cooperative ----coop.  
Coordinated Universal Time ----UTC  
corner ----cor.  
Corporation (commercial) ----Corp.  
corrected ----cor  
correlation coefficient ----*r*  
cosecant ----csc  
cosecant, hyperbolic ----csch  
cosine ----cos  
cosine, hyperbolic ----cosh  
cotangent ----cot  
cotangent, hyperbolic ----coth  
coulomb ----C  
counts per minute ----c/min  
Court (in addresses only) ----Ct.  
critical ----crit  
Cross, Iddings, Pirsson, and  
Washington ----CIPW  
cross section of atoms and nuclei ---- $\sigma$   
crystalline, crystallographic ----cryst  
crystallographic axes ----*a, b, c*  
cumulative frequency ----c.f.  
curie ----Ci  
cutting point in a hypothesis  
test ---- $\Omega$   
cycles per minute ----c/min  
cycles per second ----c/s  
cylinder ----cyl  
dagger ----†  
darcy, darcies ----D  
day ----d  
debye unit ----D  
decay constant ---- $\lambda$   
decay constant based on alpha  
emission ---- $\lambda_\alpha$   
decay constant based on negative  
beta emission ---- $\lambda_{\beta^-}$   
decay constant based on orbital  
electron capture ---- $\lambda_\epsilon$  or  $\lambda_{EC}$   
decay constant based on positron  
emission ---- $\lambda_{\beta^+}$   
decay constant based on spontaneous  
fission ---- $\lambda_{SF}$   
December ----Dec.  
deci (prefix) ----d  
decibel ----dB  
decibel unit ----dBU  
Deep Sea Drilling Project ----DSDP  
degree ----°  
degree Celsius ----°C  
degree Fahrenheit ----°F  
degree rankine ----°R  
degree réaumur ----°R  
degrees of freedom ----d.f.  
deka (prefix) ----da

delta (finite change, increment,  
variation, difference) ---- $\Delta$  or  $\delta$   
density (mass) ---- $\rho$   
density (relative) ----*d*  
department ----dept.  
depth ----*h*  
deuterium ----D or  $^2\text{H}$   
deuteron ----d  
development ----level.  
diameter ----diam, *D* or *d*  
dichloro-diphenyl-dichloro-ethane  
(or delete hyphens and close up  
spaces) ----DDD  
dichloro-diphenyl-dichloro-ethylene  
(or delete hyphens and close up  
spaces) ----DDE  
dichloro-diphenyl-trichloro-ethane  
(or delete hyphens and close up  
spaces) ----DDT  
dichlorophenoxyacetic acid ----2,4-D  
dielectric constant (permittivity) ---- $\epsilon$   
dieresis; umlaut ----¨  
differential, partial ---- $\partial$   
differential, total ----*d* or *d*  
differential thermoanalysis ----dta  
dilute ----dil  
direct current ----dc  
direct-current (unit modifier) ----d-c  
direction of extraordinary ray ----E  
direction of flow ----→  
direction of ordinary ray ----O  
discharge; total water discharge; rate  
of discharge; recharge ----*Q*  
disintegrations per minute ----d/min  
disintegrations per second ----d/s  
dissertation ----dissert.  
dissociation constant ----*K*  
dissociation constant, negative  
logarithm of;  $-\log K$  ----p*K*  
dissolved oxygen ----DO  
dissolved solids ----DS  
distilled ----dist  
distribution ----distrib.  
district ----dist.  
ditto (the same) ----do.  
divided by ----÷  
doctor of philosophy ----Ph. D.  
document ----doc.  
dozen ----doz  
Drive (in addresses only) ----Dr.  
dropping mercury electrode ----dme  
dry basis ----DB  
dyne ----dyn  
east ----E.  
eastern daylight time ----e.d.t.  
eastern standard time ----e.s.t.  
eastern time ----e.t.

- ecologic (al) \_\_\_\_ ecol.  
 economic (al) \_\_\_\_ econ.  
 edition (s) \_\_\_\_ ed (s) .  
 editor(s) \_\_\_\_ ed (s) .  
 educational \_\_\_\_ educ.  
 efficiency \_\_\_\_ eff  
 electric (al) \_\_\_\_ elec  
 electric current \_\_\_\_  $I$   
 electric current density \_\_\_\_  $J, j$   
 electric field strength \_\_\_\_  $E$   
 electric flux \_\_\_\_  $\Psi$   
 electric potential \_\_\_\_  $V$   
 electromagnetic cgs unit \_\_\_\_ emu  
 electromotive force \_\_\_\_ emf,  $E$   
 electron \_\_\_\_  $e$  or  $e$   
 electron mass \_\_\_\_  $m_e$   
 electron spin resonance \_\_\_\_ esr  
 electronvolt \_\_\_\_ eV  
 electrostatic cgs unit \_\_\_\_ esu  
 elementary charge \_\_\_\_  $e$   
 elevation \_\_\_\_ elev  
 emendatio (emended) \_\_\_\_ emend.  
 end point \_\_\_\_ EP  
 energy \_\_\_\_  $E$   
 energy (kinetic) \_\_\_\_  $E_k$   
 energy (potential) \_\_\_\_  $E_p$   
 engineering \_\_\_\_ eng.  
 enthalpy \_\_\_\_  $H$   
 entomologic(al) \_\_\_\_ entomol.  
 entropy \_\_\_\_  $S$   
 entropy (standard state of) \_\_\_\_  $S^\circ$   
 ephemeris time \_\_\_\_ ET  
 equal to \_\_\_\_ =  
     not equal to \_\_\_\_  $\neq$   
 equation (s) \_\_\_\_ eq (s)  
 equilibrium constant \_\_\_\_  $K$   
 equivalent \_\_\_\_ equiv.  
 equivalent uranium \_\_\_\_ cU  
 equivalent weight \_\_\_\_ equiv wt  
 error function \_\_\_\_ erf  
 error function (complement to) \_\_\_\_ erfc  
 (ethylenedinitrilo) tetraacetic acid  
     disodium salt \_\_\_\_ sodium salt of EDTA  
 Euler number \_\_\_\_  $E$   
 ex grupo \_\_\_\_ ex gr.  
 exa (prefix) \_\_\_\_ E  
 examination \_\_\_\_ exam.  
 exchangeable-potassium-  
     percentage \_\_\_\_ EPP  
 exchangeable-sodium-percentage \_\_\_\_ ESP  
 excited hydrogen atom \_\_\_\_  $H^*$   
 Executive Document \_\_\_\_ Ex. Doc.  
 experiment \_\_\_\_ expt  
 experimental \_\_\_\_ exptl  
 explanation, explanatory \_\_\_\_ expl.  
 exponential of \_\_\_\_ exp,  $e$   
 extension \_\_\_\_ ext.  
 extract, extracted \_\_\_\_ extr.
- factorial product \_\_\_\_ !  
 faculty \_\_\_\_ fac.  
 Fahrenheit \_\_\_\_ F  
 farad \_\_\_\_ F  
 Faraday's constant (the faraday) \_\_\_\_  $F$   
 February \_\_\_\_ Feb.  
 femto (prefix) \_\_\_\_ f  
 figure (s) \_\_\_\_ fig (s) .  
 foot, feet \_\_\_\_ ft  
 foot-candle \_\_\_\_ ft-c  
 foot-lambert \_\_\_\_ ft-L  
 foot-pound-second (system) \_\_\_\_ FPS  
 foraminiferal \_\_\_\_ foram.  
 force \_\_\_\_  $F$   
 force (moment of) \_\_\_\_  $M$   
 formality \_\_\_\_  $f$   
 formula translator \_\_\_\_ Fortran  
 franc (money) \_\_\_\_ F  
 freezing point \_\_\_\_ fp  
 frequency \_\_\_\_  $f$  or  $\nu$   
 frequency (spectroscopy) \_\_\_\_  $\nu$   
 friction, coefficient of \_\_\_\_  $\mu$  or  $f$   
 frontispiece \_\_\_\_ front.  
 Froude number \_\_\_\_ F  
 $F$ -statistic for equality of variances \_\_\_\_  $F$   
 fugacity \_\_\_\_  $f$   
 function of  $x$  \_\_\_\_  $f(x)$   
 fusion point \_\_\_\_ fmp  
 gal \_\_\_\_ Gal  
 gallon \_\_\_\_ gal  
 gamma function \_\_\_\_  $\Gamma$   
 gas, as in  $H_2O(g)$  \_\_\_\_ (g)  
 gas constant \_\_\_\_  $R$   
 gas liquid partition chroma-  
     tography \_\_\_\_ glpc  
 gauss \_\_\_\_ Gs or G  
 Geiger-Müller (unit modifier) \_\_\_\_ G-M  
 geochemical \_\_\_\_ geochem.  
 geodetic \_\_\_\_ geod.  
 geographic (al) \_\_\_\_ geog.  
 geologic (al) \_\_\_\_ geol.  
 Geologic Names Committee of the  
     U.S. Geological Survey \_\_\_\_ GNC  
 Geological Society of America \_\_\_\_ GSA  
 geophysical \_\_\_\_ geophys.  
 Gibbs free energy, Gibbs function \_\_\_\_  $G$   
 Gibbs free energy (standard  
     state) \_\_\_\_  $G^\circ$   
 giga (prefix) \_\_\_\_ G  
 government \_\_\_\_ govt.  
 gradient \_\_\_\_  $\nabla$   
 grain \_\_\_\_ gr  
 gram \_\_\_\_ g  
 grave accent \_\_\_\_ `  $\backslash$   
 gravitational acceleration, accelera-  
     tion of free fall, local accelera-  
     tion due to gravity \_\_\_\_  $g$   
 gravitational constant \_\_\_\_ G

gray (unit of measure for absorbed dose) ---- Gy  
 greater than ---- >  
     not greater than ----  $\nrightarrow$   
     much greater than ----  $\gg$   
 greater than approximately equal to ----  $\gtrsim$   
 greater than or equal to ----  $\geq$  or  $\equiv$   
 Greenwich civil time ---- G.c.t.  
 Greenwich mean astronomical time ---- G.m.a.t.  
 Greenwich mean time ---- G.m.t.  
 gross ---- gr  
 gross weight ---- gr wt  
 half-life ----  $T_{1/2}$   
 half-life, reduced ----  $fT_{1/2}$   
 handbook ---- handb.  
 haversine ---- hav  
 head, total ---- H  
 heat capacity ---- C  
 heat capacity at constant pressure ----  $C_p$   
 heat capacity at constant volume ----  $C_v$   
 hectare ---- ha  
 hecto (prefix) ---- h  
 height ---- h  
 Helmholtz free energy ---- A  
 henry, henries ---- H  
 hertz ---- Hz  
 high-pressure (unit modifier) ---- h-p  
 high-pressure metal vapor ---- HPMV  
 historic (al) ---- hist.  
 horsepower ---- hp  
 hour ---- h  
 House bill (with number) ---- H.R.  
 House Concurrent Resolution (with number) ---- H. Con. Res.  
 House Document (with number) ---- H. Doc.  
 House Joint Resolution (with number) ---- H.J. Res.  
 House Report (with number) ---- H. Rept.  
 House Resolution (with number) ---- H. Res.  
 hydrogen ion activity, measure of ---- pH  
 hydrographic ---- hydrog.  
 hydrologic (al) ---- hydrol.  
 hyperbolic functions, inverse, prefix to be added to abbreviation (for example, arcosh) ---- ar  
 hypothesis (alternative) ----  $H_1$   
 hypothesis (null) ----  $H_0$   
 identical with ----  $\equiv$   
     not identical with ----  $\neq$   
 imaginary square root of  $-1$  ----  $i$  or  $j$   
 inch (when used with ft, lb, exponents, omit period) ---- in.

Incorporated (commercial) ---- Inc.  
 indeterminate ---- indet.  
 index of refraction ----  $n$   
 indices of refraction for biaxial crystals ----  $n_x$ ,  $n_y$ , and  $n_z$  or  $\alpha$ ,  $\beta$ , and  $\gamma$   
 indices of refraction for uniaxial crystals ----  $n_o$  and  $n_e$  or  $\omega$  and  $\epsilon$   
 inductance (mutual) ---- M  
 inductance (self) ---- L  
 infinity ----  $\infty$   
 infrared ---- ir  
 inside diameter ---- ID  
 insoluble ---- insol.  
 institute, institution ---- inst.  
 integral ----  $\int$   
 integral, closed (circuital or contour) ----  $\oint$   
 intensity of X-rays reflected from crystallographic planes ---- I  
 intermediate-pressure (unit modifier) ---- i-p  
 internal ---- int  
 international ---- internat.  
 International Atomic Time ---- TAI  
 International Decade of Ocean Exploration ---- IDOE  
 International Geophysical Year ---- IGY  
 International Hydrological Decade ---- IHD  
 intersection or logical product ----  $\cap$   
 investigation (s) ---- inv.  
 ionization constant ----  $K$  or  $K_i$   
 irrigation water classification: C denotes conductivity (electrical); S denotes sodium (SAR); numbers denote respective numerical quality classes ---- C2-S3  
 Jackson turbidity unit ---- Jtu  
 January ---- Jan.  
 Joint Oceanographic Institutions' Deep-Earth Sampling ---- JOIDES  
 joule ---- J  
 Joule-Thomson coefficient ----  $\mu$   
 Junior ---- Jr.  
 kelvin ---- K  
 kilo (prefix) ---- k  
 kilohm ----  $k\Omega$   
 kilowatt-hour ---- kWh  
 K-meson ---- K  
 knot ---- kn  
 laboratory ---- lab.  
 lambert ---- L  
 langley ---- ly  
 Laplacian operator ----  $\nabla^2$   
 latitude (abbreviated only when used with figures) ---- lat

- length\_\_\_\_*l*  
 less than\_\_\_\_<  
   much less than\_\_\_\_<<  
   not less than\_\_\_\_>  
 less than approximately equal to\_\_\_\_≈  
 less than or equal to\_\_\_\_≤ or ≤  
 library\_\_\_\_libr.  
 limit\_\_\_\_lim  
 limit of  $f(x)$ \_\_\_\_lim  $f(x)$   
 linear alkylsulfonate\_\_\_\_LAS  
 linear combination\_\_\_\_ $q$   
 liquid\_\_\_\_liq  
 liter\_\_\_\_L  
 local standard time\_\_\_\_l.s.t.  
 local time\_\_\_\_l.t.  
 locality, localities (used only with numbers)\_\_\_\_loc (s).  
 logarithm (common)\_\_\_\_log  
 logarithm (natural)\_\_\_\_log<sub>e</sub> or ln  
 logarithm of an observation\_\_\_\_ $u$   
 logical product or intersection\_\_\_\_∩  
 logical sum or union\_\_\_\_∪  
 longitude (when used with lat. omit period; abbreviated only when used with figures; use "long." if may be confused with adjective)\_\_\_\_long  
 longitudinal velocity; *P*-wave velocity\_\_\_\_ $v_p$   
 low-pressure (unit modifier)\_\_\_\_l-p  
 lumen\_\_\_\_lm  
 luminous flux\_\_\_\_Φ  
 lux\_\_\_\_lx  
 macron\_\_\_\_ $\bar{\quad}$   
 magnetic field strength or intensity\_\_\_\_***H***  
 magnetic flux\_\_\_\_Φ  
 magnetic induction\_\_\_\_***B***  
 Manning's roughness (resistance) coefficient\_\_\_\_ $n$   
 March\_\_\_\_Mar.  
 mass\_\_\_\_*m*  
 mass number\_\_\_\_*A*  
 mass number of species  
   *X*\_\_\_\_*A* (*X*) or  $A_x$   
 master of arts\_\_\_\_M.A. or A.M.  
 master of science\_\_\_\_M.S. or S.M.  
 mathematics (or mathematical)\_\_\_\_math.  
 matrix; for example  $\| a_{ij} \|$  or  $(a_{ij})$   
   or ***A***\_\_\_\_ $\| \quad \|$  or  $( \quad )$  or ***A***  
 matrix, cofactor of element  $a_{ij}$ \_\_\_\_ $A_{ij}$   
 matrix, conjugate\_\_\_\_***A'***  
 matrix, determinant of; for example  $|a_{ij}|$ \_\_\_\_ $| \quad |$   
 matrix, identity\_\_\_\_***I***  
 matrix, inverse\_\_\_\_ $A^{-1}$   
 matrix, transpose\_\_\_\_ $A^T$   
 maximum\_\_\_\_max  
 maxwell\_\_\_\_Mx  
 mean, a statistic to estimate the mean of lognormally distributed observations\_\_\_\_*m*  
 mean life\_\_\_\_ $\tau$   
 mean of a linear combination  $q$ \_\_\_\_ $\mu_q$   
 mean of the lognormal distribution\_\_\_\_ **$\alpha$**   
 mean of the negative binomial distribution\_\_\_\_ $\theta$   
 mean of sample means\_\_\_\_ $\mu_{\bar{p}}$   
 mean of the variance of sample means\_\_\_\_ $\mu_s^2/\bar{p}$   
 mean sea level\_\_\_\_m.s.l.  
 mean square error\_\_\_\_M.S.E.  
 mechanic (al)\_\_\_\_mech.  
 medical\_\_\_\_med.  
 meeting (s)\_\_\_\_mtg.  
 mega (prefix)\_\_\_\_M  
 megohm\_\_\_\_MΩ  
 melting point\_\_\_\_mp  
 member of (used with a set and its elements)\_\_\_\_ $\epsilon$   
 memoir\_\_\_\_mem.  
 memorandum\_\_\_\_memo.  
 meta (in organic compounds)\_\_\_\_*m*  
 metallurgical (al)\_\_\_\_metall.  
 meteoritical\_\_\_\_meteorit.  
 meteorologic (al)\_\_\_\_meteorol.  
 methylene-blue active substance\_\_\_\_MBAS  
 meter\_\_\_\_m  
 metric ton\_\_\_\_t  
 micro (prefix)\_\_\_\_ $\mu$   
 micron\_\_\_\_ $\mu$   
 microscopic (al)\_\_\_\_microsc.  
 midnight\_\_\_\_12 p.m.  
 mile\_\_\_\_mi  
 military\_\_\_\_mil.  
 Miller indices\_\_\_\_*hkl*  
 milli (prefix)\_\_\_\_m  
 millimeter of mercury\_\_\_\_mmHg  
 million gallons per day\_\_\_\_Mgal/d  
 million years\_\_\_\_m.y.  
 mineralogical\_\_\_\_mineralog.  
 minimum\_\_\_\_min  
 minus\_\_\_\_—  
 minus or plus\_\_\_\_ $\mp$   
 minute\_\_\_\_min  
 minute; prime; foot\_\_\_\_  
 miscellaneous\_\_\_\_misc.  
 Miscellaneous Document (with number)\_\_\_\_Misc. Doc.  
 mixture melting point\_\_\_\_mmp  
 Modified Mercalli\_\_\_\_MM  
 molality, molal (concentration)\_\_\_\_*m*  
 molar concentration of substance  
   ***B***\_\_\_\_ $c_B$

- molar mass of substance B \_\_\_  $M_B$   
 molarity, molar (concentration) \_\_\_  $M$   
 mole \_\_\_ mol  
 molecular concentration \_\_\_  $C$   
 molecular weight \_\_\_ mol. wt  
 mountain, mountains \_\_\_ mtn., mts.  
 month \_\_\_ mo  
 motorship \_\_\_ MS  
 mountain daylight time \_\_\_ m.d.t.  
 mountain standard time \_\_\_ m.s.t.  
 mountain time \_\_\_ m.t.  
 multiplied by \_\_\_  $\times$   
 multiplying factor for the geometric  
 mean of lognormally distributed  
 observations \_\_\_  $\psi_n$   
 multiplying factor for the variance  
 of lognormally distributed  
 observations \_\_\_  $\phi_n$   
 multispectral scanner \_\_\_ MSS  
 muon \_\_\_  $\mu$   
 museum \_\_\_ mus.  
 myria (prefix) \_\_\_ my  
 nabla; del; differential vector  
 operator \_\_\_  $\nabla$   
 nano (prefix) \_\_\_ n  
 national \_\_\_ natl.  
 natural \_\_\_ nat.  
 natural variability \_\_\_  $\xi_n$   
 nautical mile \_\_\_ nmi  
 neutrino \_\_\_  $\nu$   
 neutron \_\_\_ n  
 new genus \_\_\_ n. gen.  
 new series \_\_\_ new ser.  
 new species \_\_\_ n. sp.  
 new variety \_\_\_ n. var.  
 newton \_\_\_ N  
 newton meter \_\_\_ N·m  
 Newtonian gravitational constant \_\_\_ G  
 no data \_\_\_ n.d.  
 no record, not reported \_\_\_ n.r.  
 nomen nudum \_\_\_ nom. nud.  
 noon \_\_\_ 12 m.  
 normality, normal (concentration) \_\_\_ N  
 north \_\_\_ N.  
 northeast \_\_\_ NE.  
 northwest \_\_\_ NW.  
 not available; not applicable \_\_\_ n.a.  
 not determined \_\_\_ n.d.  
 November \_\_\_ Nov.  
 nucleon number \_\_\_ A  
 number (s) \_\_\_ no (s) .  
 number of observations in a  
 population \_\_\_ N  
 number of observations (sample  
 size) \_\_\_ n  
 number of samples \_\_\_ k  
 observation \_\_\_ w  
 observed \_\_\_ obs  
 observed frequency of observations \_\_\_ O  
 oceanographic (al) \_\_\_ oceanog.  
 October \_\_\_ Oct.  
 oersted \_\_\_ Oe  
 ohm \_\_\_  $\Omega$   
 ohm centimeter \_\_\_  $\Omega \cdot \text{cm}$   
 ohm meter \_\_\_  $\Omega \cdot \text{m}$   
 optical directions in a crystal; also  
 rays of light in these directions  
 and pleochroic colors in these  
 directions \_\_\_ X, Y, Z  
 ornithological \_\_\_ ornithol.  
 ortho (in organic compounds) \_\_\_ o  
 ounce \_\_\_ oz  
 outside diameter \_\_\_ OD  
 oven dry basis \_\_\_ ODB  
 oxidation-reduction potential \_\_\_ Eh  
 Pacific daylight time \_\_\_ P.d.t.  
 Pacific standard time \_\_\_ P.s.t.  
 Pacific time \_\_\_ P.t.  
 page (s) \_\_\_ p.  
 paleoecologic (al) \_\_\_ paleoecol.  
 paleogeographic(al) \_\_\_ paleogeog.  
 paleontologic (al) \_\_\_ paleont.  
 Pan American \_\_\_ Pan Am.  
 para (in organic compounds) \_\_\_ p  
 paragraph \_\_\_ par.  
 parsec \_\_\_ pc  
 part (s) \_\_\_ pt (s) .  
 part (s) per billion \_\_\_ ppb  
 part (s) per million \_\_\_ ppm  
 partial pressure of oxygen or carbon  
 dioxide \_\_\_  $P_{O_2}$ ,  $P_{CO_2}$ , or  $P(O_2)$  ,  
 $P(CO_2)$   
 particle-size diameter \_\_\_  $\phi$   
 partition function \_\_\_ Z  
 pascal \_\_\_ Pa  
 pascal second \_\_\_ Pa·s  
 peck \_\_\_ pk  
 Peedee belemnite \_\_\_ PDB  
 pentaerythritol \_\_\_ PET  
 percentage risk of type I error \_\_\_  $\alpha$   
 percentage risk of type II error \_\_\_  $\beta$   
 period \_\_\_ T  
 peta (prefix) \_\_\_ P  
 petrographic (al) \_\_\_ petrog.  
 petrologic(al) \_\_\_ petrol.  
 phase \_\_\_ ph.  
 phenyl \_\_\_ Ph  
 philosophical \_\_\_ philos.  
 phot \_\_\_ ph  
 photogrammetric (al) \_\_\_ photogramm.  
 photon \_\_\_  $\gamma$   
 physical \_\_\_ phys.  
 physiographic (al) \_\_\_ physiog.  
 pico (prefix) \_\_\_ p  
 pint \_\_\_ pt  
 pi (mathematical constant) \_\_\_  $\pi$

- pion\_\_\_\_\_π  
 Place (in addresses only) \_\_\_\_\_Pl.  
 Planck constant\_\_\_\_\_h  
 plate (s) \_\_\_\_\_pl (s) .  
 plus\_\_\_\_\_+  
 plus or minus \_\_\_\_\_±  
 poise\_\_\_\_\_P  
 Poisson ratio\_\_\_\_\_ν or μ  
 polychlorinated biphenyls\_\_\_\_\_PCB  
 polytechnic\_\_\_\_\_polytech.  
 pooled sample variance\_\_\_\_\_s<sub>p</sub><sup>2</sup>  
 population coefficient of variation\_\_\_\_\_γ  
 population mean\_\_\_\_\_μ  
 population standard deviation\_\_\_\_\_σ  
 population variance\_\_\_\_\_σ<sup>2</sup>  
 post meridiem (afternoon) \_\_\_\_\_p.m.  
 posterior distribution of a  
   parameter θ \_\_\_\_\_D<sub>1</sub>(θ)  
 potassium-adsorption-ratio\_\_\_\_\_PAR  
 potential difference\_\_\_\_\_V or U  
 pound (mass) \_\_\_\_\_lb  
 pound apothecary\_\_\_\_\_lb ap  
 pound avoirdupois\_\_\_\_\_lb avdp  
 pound-force\_\_\_\_\_lbf  
 pound-force per square inch\_\_\_\_\_lbf/in<sup>2</sup>  
 power\_\_\_\_\_P  
 precipitate\_\_\_\_\_ppt, †  
 preliminary\_\_\_\_\_prelim.  
 preparation variability\_\_\_\_\_ξ<sub>p</sub>  
 pressure\_\_\_\_\_P or p  
 primary wave \_\_\_\_\_P-wave  
 prior distribution of a  
   parameter θ \_\_\_\_\_D<sub>0</sub>(θ)  
 probability of the event A \_\_\_\_\_P(A)  
 proceedings\_\_\_\_\_proc.  
 product of a series\_\_\_\_\_Π  
 Programing Language/1\_\_\_\_\_PL/1  
 project\_\_\_\_\_proj.  
 proportion\_\_\_\_\_ :  
 proportion of successes in a binomial  
   population\_\_\_\_\_θ  
 protium\_\_\_\_\_<sup>1</sup>H  
 proton\_\_\_\_\_p  
 publication (s) \_\_\_\_\_pub (s) .  
 pulsatance\_\_\_\_\_ω  
 quadrangle\_\_\_\_\_quad.  
 quantity of electric charge or  
   electricity; quantity of heat;  
   quantity of light\_\_\_\_\_Q  
 quart\_\_\_\_\_qt  
 quarterly\_\_\_\_\_quart.  
 rad\_\_\_\_\_rd  
 radar beacon\_\_\_\_\_racon  
 radian\_\_\_\_\_rad  
 radiance\_\_\_\_\_B  
 radiant emissivity\_\_\_\_\_J  
 radiant exposure\_\_\_\_\_H  
 radiant energy\_\_\_\_\_Q  
 radiant energy density\_\_\_\_\_u  
 radiant flux\_\_\_\_\_Φ  
 radiant intensity\_\_\_\_\_I  
 radical; root; square root\_\_\_\_\_√  
 radio detection and ranging\_\_\_\_\_radar  
 radius\_\_\_\_\_r or R  
 Railroad\_\_\_\_\_RR.  
 Railway\_\_\_\_\_Ry.  
 random fluctuation of "experi-  
   mental error"\_\_\_\_\_e  
 Range (s) (legal land term) \_\_\_\_\_R (s) .  
 rankine (used with degree) \_\_\_\_\_R  
 ratio; is to\_\_\_\_\_ :  
 reactance\_\_\_\_\_X  
 rcaumur (used with degree) \_\_\_\_\_R  
 reconnaissance\_\_\_\_\_reconn.  
 record(s) \_\_\_\_\_rec (s) .  
 recrystallized\_\_\_\_\_recryst  
 refractive index at 20°C, sodium (D)  
   line\_\_\_\_\_n<sub>D</sub><sup>20</sup>  
 relative cumulative frequency\_\_\_\_\_r. c. f.  
 repeating decimal; bar covers part  
   that is to be repeated\_\_\_\_\_ 1.14  
 report (s) \_\_\_\_\_rep (s) .  
 resistance\_\_\_\_\_R  
 resistivity\_\_\_\_\_ρ  
 return beam vidicon\_\_\_\_\_RBV  
 reversible reaction\_\_\_\_\_↔  
 review (s) \_\_\_\_\_rev.  
 revolutions per minute\_\_\_\_\_r/min  
 revolutions per second\_\_\_\_\_r/s  
 Reynolds number\_\_\_\_\_R  
 Road (in addresses only) \_\_\_\_\_Rd.  
 roentgen\_\_\_\_\_R  
 roentgen equivalent, man or  
   mammal\_\_\_\_\_Rem  
 roentgen equivalent, physical\_\_\_\_\_Rep  
 root mean square\_\_\_\_\_rms  
 rubidium acid phthalate\_\_\_\_\_RAP  
 Rydberg constant\_\_\_\_\_R or R<sub>y</sub>  
 Rydberg constant for infinite  
   mass\_\_\_\_\_R<sub>∞</sub>  
 Saint, Sainte, Saints\_\_\_\_\_St., Ste., SS.  
 sample coefficient of variation\_\_\_\_\_C  
 sample mean\_\_\_\_\_x̄  
 sample mean of logarithms\_\_\_\_\_x̄  
 sample standard deviation\_\_\_\_\_s  
 sample variance\_\_\_\_\_s<sup>2</sup>  
 sample variance of logarithms\_\_\_\_\_s<sub>u</sub><sup>2</sup>  
 sampling variability\_\_\_\_\_ξ<sub>s</sub>  
 saturated calomel electrode\_\_\_\_\_sce  
 science (s) , scientific\_\_\_\_\_sci.  
 secant\_\_\_\_\_sec  
 secant, hyperbolic\_\_\_\_\_sech  
 second\_\_\_\_\_2d  
 second (time) \_\_\_\_\_s  
 second; double prime; inch\_\_\_\_\_ "

secondary wave\_\_\_\_S-wave  
 section (s) (subdivision of town-  
 ship) \_\_\_\_sec(s) .  
 sedimentary\_\_\_\_sed.  
 seismographic\_\_\_\_seismog.  
 seismologic (al) \_\_\_\_seismol.  
 Senate bill (with number) \_\_\_\_S.  
 Senate Concurrent Resolution (with  
 number) \_\_\_\_S. Con. Res.  
 Senate Document (with  
 number) \_\_\_\_S. Doc.  
 Senate Joint Resolution (with  
 number) \_\_\_\_S.J. Res.  
 Senate Report (with number) \_\_\_\_S. Rept.  
 Senate Resolution (with  
 number) \_\_\_\_S. Res.  
 Senior\_\_\_\_Sr.  
 sensu lato\_\_\_\_s.l.  
 sensu stricto\_\_\_\_s.s.  
 September\_\_\_\_Sept.  
 series\_\_\_\_ser.  
 session\_\_\_\_sess.  
 shear velocity; S-wave velocity\_\_\_\_ $v_s$   
 siemens\_\_\_\_S  
 sine\_\_\_\_sin  
 sine, hyperbolic\_\_\_\_sinh  
 sine of the amplitude (an  
 elliptic function) \_\_\_\_sn  
 single-degree-of-freedom statistic\_\_\_\_ $Q^2$   
 skewness of frequency distribution\_\_\_\_sk  
 society, societies\_\_\_\_soc., socs.  
 sodium, line in spectrum of\_\_\_\_D  
 sodium-adsorption-ratio\_\_\_\_SAR  
 solid, as in AgCl (s) \_\_\_\_ (s)  
 solid angle\_\_\_\_ $\omega$   
 solidus\_\_\_\_/  
 soluble\_\_\_\_sol  
 solution\_\_\_\_soln  
 sound fixing and ranging\_\_\_\_sofar  
 sound navigation and ranging\_\_\_\_sonar  
 south\_\_\_\_S.  
 southeast\_\_\_\_SE.  
 southwest\_\_\_\_SW.  
 Soyuz Sovetskikh Sotsialisticheskikh  
 Respublik\_\_\_\_SSSR  
 spacing of Bragg planes in a crystal\_\_\_\_d  
 species (singular) \_\_\_\_sp.  
 (plural) \_\_\_\_spp.  
 specific gravity\_\_\_\_sp gr  
 specific heat\_\_\_\_sp ht  
 specific heat capacity\_\_\_\_c  
 specific volume\_\_\_\_sp vol  
 speleological\_\_\_\_speleol.  
 square\_\_\_\_sq  
 Square (in address or as part of  
 place name) \_\_\_\_Sq.  
 standard\_\_\_\_std  
 standard deviation\_\_\_\_ $\sigma$

standard error of laboratory means\_\_\_\_ $s_x$   
 standard mean ocean water\_\_\_\_SMOW  
 standard state\_\_\_\_°  
 standard state Gibbs free energy\_\_\_\_ $G^\circ$   
 standardized normal distribu-  
 tion\_\_\_\_s.n.d.  
 station (s) (used only with  
 numbers) \_\_\_\_sta (s) .  
 Statutes at Large\_\_\_\_Stat. L.  
 Revised Statutes\_\_\_\_Rev. Stat.  
 Supplement to the Revised  
 Statutes\_\_\_\_Supp. Rev. Stat.  
 steamship\_\_\_\_SS  
 Stefan-Boltzmann constant\_\_\_\_ $\sigma$   
 steradian (solid angle) \_\_\_\_sr  
 stokes\_\_\_\_St  
 strain, normal or linear\_\_\_\_ $\epsilon$   
 strain, shear\_\_\_\_ $\gamma$   
 stratigraphic (al) \_\_\_\_strat.  
 Street (in addresses only) \_\_\_\_St.  
 stress, normal\_\_\_\_ $\sigma$   
 stress, shear\_\_\_\_ $\tau$   
 Student's *t*-statistic\_\_\_\_*t*  
 subgenus\_\_\_\_subgen.  
 subset of; is contained in\_\_\_\_ $\subset$   
 subspecies\_\_\_\_subsp.  
 sum\_\_\_\_ $\Sigma$   
 sum of squares\_\_\_\_SS  
 sum of squares of the replication  
 totals\_\_\_\_ $T_r^2$   
 sum of squares of the treatment  
 totals\_\_\_\_ $T_t^2$   
 sum total of observations in a  
 sample\_\_\_\_*T*  
 summary\_\_\_\_summ.  
 Superintendent\_\_\_\_Supt.  
 supplement (s), supplementary\_\_\_\_supp.  
 surface tension\_\_\_\_ $\gamma$  or  $\sigma$   
 symmetrical\_\_\_\_sym  
 tangent\_\_\_\_tan  
 tangent, hyperbolic\_\_\_\_tanh  
 technic(al) \_\_\_\_tech.  
 technologic (al) \_\_\_\_technol.  
 temperature\_\_\_\_temp  
 temperature, in degrees Celsius\_\_\_\_*t*  
 temperature, in kelvins; absolute  
 temperature; thermodynamic  
 temperature\_\_\_\_*T*  
 tera (prefix) \_\_\_\_T  
 Terrace (in addresses only) \_\_\_\_Ter.  
 Territory, Territories,  
 Territorial\_\_\_\_Terr.  
 tesla\_\_\_\_T  
 theoretical frequency of observa-  
 tions\_\_\_\_*T*  
 therefore\_\_\_\_∴.  
 thermogravimetric analysis\_\_\_\_tga

- thickness \_\_\_ *t* or *d*  
 thin-layer chromatography \_\_\_ tlc  
 third \_\_\_ 3d  
 thus \_\_\_ sic  
 tilde \_\_\_ ~  
 time \_\_\_ *t*  
 ton, metric \_\_\_ t  
 topographic (al) \_\_\_ topog.  
 total (grand) of observations squared \_\_\_  $G^2$   
 Township, -s (legal land division) \_\_\_ T., Tps.  
 trace \_\_\_ tr.  
 transformed observation \_\_\_ *u*  
 transmittance \_\_\_ *T*  
 triangle \_\_\_  $\Delta$   
 trigonometric functions, inverse circular, prefix to be added to abbreviation (for example, arccos) \_\_\_ arc  
 trinitrotoluol \_\_\_ TNT  
 tritium \_\_\_ T or  $^3\text{H}$   
 tritium unit \_\_\_ TU  
 triton \_\_\_ t  
 2, 3-dimercaptopropanol \_\_\_ BAL  
 ultraviolet \_\_\_ uv  
 undetermined \_\_\_ undet.  
 unified atomic mass unit \_\_\_ u  
 Union of Soviet Socialist Republics \_\_\_ U.S.S.R.  
 union or logical sum \_\_\_ U  
 unit-cell edges \_\_\_  $a_0$ ,  $b_0$ , and  $c_0$   
 United States (adjective) \_\_\_ U.S.  
 United States Board on Geographic Names \_\_\_ BGN  
 United States Code (with number or number and lowercase letters, such as U.S.C. 10 a-d) \_\_\_ U.S.C.  
 United States Code Annotated \_\_\_ U.S.C.A.  
 United States Code Supplement \_\_\_ U.S.C. Supp.  
 United States Geological Survey (use abbreviation where followed by locality or collection number) \_\_\_ USGS  
 United States National Museum (use abbreviation where followed by locality or collection number) \_\_\_ USNM  
 United States of America \_\_\_ U.S.A.  
 universal time \_\_\_ u.t.  
 Universal Time, Coordinated \_\_\_ UTC  
 Universal Transverse Mercator \_\_\_ UTM  
 university \_\_\_ univ.  
 vacuum \_\_\_ vac  
 vapor pressure \_\_\_ vp  
 variance, statistic to estimate the variance of lognormally distributed observations \_\_\_  $V^2$   
 variance of linear combination  $q$  \_\_\_  $\sigma_q^2$   
 variance of lognormal distribution \_\_\_  $\beta^2$   
 variance of negative binomial distribution \_\_\_  $k$   
 variance of population means \_\_\_  $\sigma_{\mu}^2$   
 variance of sample mean \_\_\_  $\sigma_{\bar{x}}^2$   
 variation operator, for constant  $x$  \_\_\_  $\delta x$   
 varies as \_\_\_  $\propto$   
 velocity \_\_\_ *v* or *u*  
 velocity of light (in vacuo) \_\_\_ *c*  
 velocity, P-wave \_\_\_  $v_p$   
 velocity, S-wave \_\_\_  $v_s$   
 versed sine \_\_\_ vers  
 versus (legal usage) \_\_\_ v.  
 (standard usage) \_\_\_ vs.  
 vertical angle elevation bench mark \_\_\_ VABM  
 vinculum (above letter) \_\_\_ —  
 virgule \_\_\_ /  
 viscosity, dynamic \_\_\_  $\eta$   
 viscosity, kinematic \_\_\_  $\nu$   
 volt \_\_\_ V  
 volume, chemical and physical use \_\_\_ *V*  
 bibliographic use \_\_\_ v.  
 volume per volume \_\_\_ v/v  
 volume strain, bulk strain \_\_\_  $\theta$   
 watt \_\_\_ W  
 watthour \_\_\_ Wh  
 wavelength \_\_\_  $\lambda$   
 wavenumber \_\_\_  $\sigma$  or  $\nu$   
 weber \_\_\_ Wb  
 weight \_\_\_ wt  
 weight per volume \_\_\_ w/v  
 weight per weight \_\_\_ w/w  
 west \_\_\_ W.  
 wind-velocity symbol \_\_\_   
 yard \_\_\_ yd  
 year \_\_\_ yr  
 yields \_\_\_  $\rightarrow$   
 Young's modulus of elasticity \_\_\_ *E*  
 zoologic (al) \_\_\_ zool.

## TYPING THE MANUSCRIPT

Printing technology is changing rapidly, but at present, and perhaps for some time to come, somebody at some stage of the Survey manuscript's author-to-reader journey must put the copy one letter and one space at a time into reproducible form. The transmitted copy must therefore be legible and it should be susceptible to photocopying. Black letters on white paper are ideal; dittoes and light blues are generally not acceptable for transmittal. Enough copies should be transmitted to permit reviewers and manuscript-processing offices to retain copies if desired. After transmittal the author should at all times have at hand a complete current copy to facilitate answering telephone or other queries.

So far as circumstances permit, the author should make himself easily available to the person who is typing his manuscript, and he should answer patiently the typist's tactful questions about possibly illegible handwriting and various kinds of apparent inconsistencies and errors. He must never adopt a "That's what I wrote, and that's what I meant" attitude lest he thereafter get exactly what he wrote.

The typed copy should be carefully proofed. Truly adequate proofing requires two persons, one to read aloud while the other checks silently. The two people most competent to proof any given manuscript are the author and the typist, and the author should not feel it is beneath his dignity to do so. Figures, particularly, should be meticulously proofed, and all calculations should be machine checked as well as proofed after the paper has been typed. Some reports have actually had to be reprinted because of errors in simple arithmetic that were not caught. It is a convenience to reviewers and editors if machine tapes accompany manuscript calculations.

The typed and proofed text manuscript should be transmitted flat, never folded or rolled, in a secure cover or envelope. Illustrations copy should be transmitted in one or more packages separately but at the same time as the text manuscript, and all the packages should be clearly marked as parts of a whole. Transmittal procedures and routing instructions are issued by each Division for its reports.

As a time and money saver, the Survey editorial staff has obtained permission from GPO to forward copy for long, complex tables in handwritten form. Two restrictions are imposed: (a) The copy must be neat, uncrowded, and clearly legible. Engineers' lettering is suggested, but not required, if handwritten tabular copy is forwarded; (b) the handwritten tables should consist mainly of statistical matter rather than of

reading columns. (The permission to transmit handwritten copy does not apply to those standardized tables that are prepared as camera copy by the originating Divisions and which, through long use, require no editing, retyping, or typesetting.)

The suggestions in this section apply only to typing of author's manuscripts. No part of an edited manuscript should be retyped unless the editor has requested it. An edited manuscript retyped is a manuscript that must be reedited. If the editor requests any retyping, the original edited pages should be returned with the newly typed ones.

## INSTRUCTIONS FOR TYPISTS

The instructions given below for typists apply to most Survey manuscripts that proceed through the author-to-reviewer-to-editor-to-typesetter-to-printer routine. Some instructions may not apply to certain special types of manuscripts, such as those consisting in part of computer printouts and those submitted, by prearrangement, in camera copy.

The typist who is to prepare manuscript copy for a Geological Survey report should become familiar with the format of title page, table of contents, first page, tables, and other details of a recent Survey publication of similar type. Then the typist should:

Type the report on only one side of heavy-quality letter-size paper. Leave ample margins (at least 1 inch) on all sides of each page of text, including tables. Don't crowd anything to save paper. Type the entire report double spaced, including contents list, tables, geologic sections, footnotes, well logs, quotations, captions of illustrations, references, and bibliographies; this instruction is a "must," to allow room for editorial marking and instructions to typesetter. Be sure to place sequential page numbers at the bottom of the pages.

In the "Contents," type the first-rank headings flush to the left; indent the other headings in multiples of three or more spaces, according to their rank. Capitalize only such words in the table of contents as should be capitalized in the text. Leader with hyphens to the page numbers, the numbers being those of the pages on which the headings appear in the manuscript. Place "Continued" lines at the head of every page of the table of contents, if applicable, to show the indentation and relative rank of the continued items.

On the first page of text, leave at least 2 inches of space above the title (or overall title if there is one). Place the full title of the report and the author's name above the abstract.

Capitalize the first word and proper names in all headings. Indent several spaces for the beginning of paragraphs.

As far as possible, type manuscript copy so that no paragraph breaks at the bottom of the page. If the paragraph is too long for the page, the last few lines may be typed single space. If the paragraph will not

fit on a single page, type the remainder of the copy on another sheet on which nothing else is typed. Sheets of a text manuscript intended for Survey publication should not be pasted lengthwise—one of the first acts of the copy preparer at the printing plant is to cut overlong text sheets into segments that will fit on the typesetter's reading rack.

Type captions of text figures on separate sheets of paper. Center a one-line overrun; type in hanging-indentation format if caption runs more than two lines. Use the figure numbers as given by the author; the editor will assign final figure numbers.

Type tables separately from text matter. Sheets may be joined, or oversize paper may be used for a table that must be wider than letter paper. Dull-finished pressure-sensitive tape, not staples or rubber cement, is used for joining sheets. Underscore for italic the heading of a table or geologic section. See that units of measure are written over columns of figures representing such units. Use "Do." for "ditto" in first and last columns, "do." elsewhere; the ditto symbol (") is not used in Survey style. If successive figures, symbols, or abbreviations in a column are the same, repeat them; "do." is used only in reading and standard date columns.

## PROOFREADING

The number and kinds of proof an author must read vary with the custom of the publishing organization and with individual circumstances. The Survey author usually proofreads his report twice, once after it has been typed and once after it has been typeset. If the report is very "rush" and the author is not immediately available for proofreading, someone in the manuscript-processing unit of his Division or some designated alternate may read proof and then authorize the next step of the publishing process.

Proofreading is best done by two people, one reading aloud to the other. If the report is lengthy, the author and his assistant proofreader will take turns at reading aloud, as the voice of one of them begins to become weary or hoarse. If no assistant is available, it is still well for the author to read aloud to himself, because the eye alone may not spot misspellings, undesirable punctuation, or whole misplaced sentences or paragraphs.

As long as his report is in the typescript stage, the author is free to make such changes, additions, or deletions as he thinks are needed. These changes may be made in the body of the text, in the margins, or on a separate sheet of paper, as most convenient and intelligible to the typist and to editors.

Once the report has been typeset, whether the author receives galley or page proof for reading, he is expected to limit his changes to typographical errors, serious errors in fact, or deviations from the copy from which the typesetter worked; changes of wording made only to improve style will probably be disallowed. The author's changes made to correct some deficiency not previously noted in the manuscript should be marked with an "AC" or with a different-colored pencil from that used for printer's errors because the printer must bill separately for "author-correction" changes. The manuscript itself must not be marked at this stage, for it is sometimes necessary to audit cost of corrections.

Authors who find errors of fact that require "AC" corrections in their proof-stage reports are supposed to feel very embarrassed, because proof-stage corrections are expensive and time-consuming. Furthermore, every typesetting machine is equipped with gremlins who watch eagerly for a chance to incorporate new, perhaps worse, errors in reset type. However, the social stigma attached to "AC" corrections having been noted, it may be further noted that errors in a printed paper will be there a long time. The author may decide to endure a little present embarrass-

ment in order to pass on to posterity a more perfect paper. On the other hand, if he just keeps quiet, posterity may not notice the error anyway.

When the author receives the typeset proof, it will probably already have some printer's or editor's marks. These marks, which may indicate doubt, inconsistencies, or blanks to be filled, should be carefully noted and action taken as indicated.

Printed-proof corrections must be made clearly and legibly in the margin of the proof opposite the place of occurrence; the typesetter has no obligation to search the body of the text for changes.

To indicate that something should be inserted, place a caret ( ^ ) at the point on the line where the insertion should be made, and write in the margin the matter to be inserted.

To indicate that something should be taken out and not replaced by something else, draw a line through it and place the "dele mark" ( / ), a form of "d" meaning "delete," in the margin.

If something is to be substituted for the matter deleted, mark through the matter to be replaced and write the substitute matter in the margin or on a separate sheet.

Do not run "skyrocket" marks from the place where a correction should be made to a mark or added matter written at some distant place on the margin of the proofsheets unless there is not room for the correction opposite the line to which it belongs. Do not cross one skyrocket mark with another.

Place punctuation and other marks that might be obscure if written alone to the left of a diagonal stroke, thus: ,/ ;/ -/. The diagonal stroke is used also (a) to separate one correction from the next where they are crowded in the margin and (b) to show the end of the corrections. A period to be inserted should be placed in a circle  $\odot$  . The space mark (#) indicates that a space such as is used between two words should be inserted at the place noted by a caret in the body of the proof.

A list of commonly used proofreader's marks and an example of their usage is reproduced from the "United States Government Printing Office Style Manual" (1973, p. 4-5).

## PROOFREADER'S MARKS

⊙	Insert period	<i>Caps.</i>	Caps—used in margin
∧	Insert comma	≡	Caps—used in text
:	Insert colon	C + SC	Caps & small caps—used in margin
;	Insert semicolon	≡	Caps & small caps—used in text
?	Insert question mark	<i>l.c.</i>	Lowercase—used in margin
!	Insert exclamation mark	/	Used in text to show deletion or substitution
=/	Insert hyphen	<i>w.f.</i>	Wrong font
∨	Insert apostrophe	○	Close up
↔↔	Insert quotation marks	⊗	Delete
—	Insert 1-em dash	⊗	Close up and delete
—	Insert 1-em dash	⊙	Correct the position
#	Insert space	⊔	Move right
<i>ld</i> >	Insert lead	⊔	Move left
<i>shill</i>	Insert virgule	⊔	Move up
∨	Superior	⊔	Move down
∧	Inferior		Aline vertically
(/)	Parentheses	—	Aline horizontally
[/]	Brackets	⊔⊔	Center horizontally
□	Indent 1 em	⊔	Center vertically
□□	Indent 2 ems	∪	Push down space
¶	Paragraph	∪	Use ligature
<i>no</i> ¶	No paragraph	<i>eq.</i> #	Equalize space—used in margin
<i>tr</i>	Transpose 1—used in margin	✓✓	Equalize space—used in text
∩	Transpose 1—used in text	<i>stet.</i>	Let it stand—used in margin
<i>sp</i>	Spell out	.....	Let it stand—used in text
<i>ital</i>	Italic—used in margin	⊗	Dirty or broken letter
—	Italic—used in text	<i>run over</i>	Carry over to next line
<i>b.f.</i>	Boldface—used in margin	<i>run back</i>	Carry back to preceding line
~~~~	Boldface—used in text	<i>out, see copy</i>	Something omitted—see copy
<i>s.c.</i>	Small caps—used in margin	<i>S/?</i>	Question to author to delete <sup>3</sup>
≡	Small caps—used in text	∧	Caret—General indicator used to mark exact position of error in text.
<i>rom.</i>	Roman type		

<sup>1</sup> In lieu of the traditional mark "tr" used to indicate letter or number transpositions, the striking out of the incorrect letters or numbers and the placement of the correct matter in the margin of the proof is the preferred method of indicating transposition corrections. (See rule 2.75.)

<sup>2</sup> Corrections involving more than two characters should be marked by striking out the entire word or number and placing the correct form in the margin. This mark should be reserved to show transposition of words.

<sup>3</sup> The form of any query carried should be such that an answer may be given simply by crossing out the complete query if a negative decision is made or the right-hand (question mark) portion to indicate an affirmative answer. (See example, p. 5.) (See rule 2.71.)

TYPOGRAPHICAL ERRORS

reset 8 pt. c&sc

so

It does not appear that the earliest printers had any method of correcting errors before the form was on the press. The learned correctors of the first two centuries of printing were not proofreaders in our sense; they were rather what we should term office editors. Their labors were chiefly to see that the proof corresponded to the copy, but that the printed page was correct in its latinity, ~~that the words were there~~ and that the sense was right. They cared but little about orthography, bad letters, or purely printer's errors, and when the text seemed to them wrong they consulted fresh authorities or altered it on their own responsibility. Good proofs in the modern sense, were impossible until professional readers were employed, men who had first a printer's education, and then spent many years in the correction of proof. The orthography of English, which for the past century has undergone little change, was very fluctuating until after the publication of Johnson's Dictionary, and capitals, which have been used with considerable regularity for the past 80 years, were previously used on the miss or hit plan. The approach to regularity, so far as we have, may be attributed to the growth of a class of professional proofreaders, and it is to them that we owe the correctness of modern printing. More errors have been found in the Bible than in any other one work. For many generations it was frequently the case that Bibles were brought out stealthily, from fear of government interference. They were frequently printed from imperfect texts, and were often modified to meet the views of those who published them. The story is related that a certain woman in Germany, who was the wife of a Printer, had become disgusted with the continual assertion of the superiority of man over woman which she had heard, hurried into the composing room while her husband was at supper and altered a sentence in the Bible, which he was printing, so that it read Narr instead of Herr, thus making the verse read "And he shall be thy fool" instead of "and he shall be thy lord." The word not was omitted by Barker, the King's printer in England in 1632, in printing the seventh commandment. He was fined £3000 on this account.

e  
g  
; g  
stat  
g  
3/5  
g  
1/2  
=/  
wf  
g lead  
lead  
out; see copy  
h  
lc/who  
" "  
" "  
K  
te over

eg #  
o  
#  
g  
not  
L/;  
not/g  
i  
=  
te  
g/it  
F/x  
[  
#  
g  
g/f/rom.  
eg #/wf/eg #  
A  
tr. up

8/?

NOTE.—The system of marking proofs can be made easier by the use of an imaginary vertical line through the center of the type area. The placement of corrections in the left-hand margin for those errors found in the left-hand portion of the proof and in the right-hand margin for right-side errors prevents overcrowding of marks and facilitates corrections. (See also rule 2.74.)

# REPORTS ON WATER RESOURCES

By the WATER RESOURCES DIVISION STAFF

Reports on water resources may involve geology, geophysics, surface- and ground-water hydrology, and various aspects of water quality, and they may present basic research, methods and techniques, or statistical data. In terms of project objectives, reports can be broadly categorized as (a) water-resource appraisal, (b) research, (c) critical problems, and (d) basic data.

## CHOOSING THE TYPE OF REPORT

Most water-resource studies in the past have been supply oriented, but as the resource has become more fully developed, the studies are being directed more toward resource management. The purpose of a report should be carefully identified and meticulously stated at project conception. Format and outlet for publication should also be determined early: Is a Water-Supply Paper or a Professional Paper more appropriate? Or should the technical information be presented in multiple publications, such as a planning bulletin for the State cooperator, a pictorial pamphlet for the general public, and a journal article for the scientific community? Program planning frequently governs the intensity of investigation and scope of the report. A brief hydrologic evaluation of an area may be presented as a reconnaissance report, whereas a detailed study may require exhaustive treatment.

## RESOURCE-APPRAISAL REPORTS

Although no general outline is suitable for all reports on water resources, appraisal reports are the most typical and they usually contain the following parts: (a) a systematic treatment of essential components that relate to water-resource availability; these components often include a description of the geologic formations and their water-bearing properties and water quality, precipitation, streamflow, recharge, discharge, limitations on development of surface water and ground water, boundary conditions that control availability and quality of water, and the cause-and-effect relations in hydrologic systems; (b) detailed descriptions of subareas, if the overall study area is large or hydrologically

complex, such as discussion of the importance of flow-system boundaries in relation to the regional hydrology and water problems of the area as a whole; and (c) summary or conclusions that emphasize significant results of the investigation.

The body of reports will differ considerably according to the nature of the area or problem to be studied. As a rule, geographic, geologic, and hydrologic descriptions should not be more elaborate than necessary to accomplish objectives. Some statement of pertinent hydrologic principles is warranted, but not extensive exposition. Similarly, a report should contain a glossary if technical terms are numerous. Valuable geologic or hydrologic results or new techniques or methods may be developed during an investigation; these may deserve publication elsewhere if their details are not essential to the report. Judgment and expedience determine whether such material should be included in the main report or presented in a separate technical journal or publication. If the area has a stratigraphic section comprising more than a few units, the general description should include a table of the geologic formations that contains a column for brief statements concerning the water-bearing properties of, and the quality of water in, each formation.

Insofar as the information is essential to discussion of the ground-water, water-quality, and surface-water conditions, the description of stratigraphic units should include information usually given in geologic reports, such as distribution, thickness, lithologic features, age, and stratigraphic relations. Mineral assemblages in stratigraphic units usually have a pronounced effect on surface-water and ground-water quality and this effect should be described. Detailed geologic data, such as lists of fossils identified, may be included but generally will be published in a separate paper. Systematic descriptions should include (a) detailed information on the water-bearing properties of the formations and on the head and quality of the water, and (b) pertinent data on the performance of typical wells. The result of pumping tests and other types of aquifer tests used in determining transmissivity and storage can properly be included in the systematic descriptions or tables, provided the report includes sufficient detail to enable the reader to evaluate the author's analysis of pumping-test results. Related data concerning such features as particle-size distribution, porosity, moisture equivalent, and permeability can be presented in systematic descriptions or in tables, usually at the end of the report.

Discussions of surface water in areal reports commonly contain evaluations of flow availability at key points in the stream system and descriptions of the relation of "gaining" and "losing" reaches to ground-water conditions. The quantitative relation between surface-water and ground-water supplies often is a critical control in evaluating the total water resource or the cause-and-effect relations and problems resulting from large ground-water withdrawals or stream diversions. Where streams interact with ground-water systems, one source of supply or water problems cannot be realistically analyzed without consideration

of the other. Other types of reports on surface water include descriptions of unusual hydrologic events, such as floods and droughts, the hydrology of specific areas, and general hydrologic or hydraulic principles.

In referring to records collected at a stream-gaging station, authors should give the station name in its entirety, except that the State name may be omitted if it is obvious from the context. Station names contain "at" or "near" or a similar term; these words are an integral part of the station name and should not be used loosely.

In reports dealing with surface-water supply, the 12-month period ending September 30 each year is termed the "water year"; for example, the year that ended September 30, 1975, was the "1975 water year."

Discussions of water quality related to use must be based on understanding of relevant criteria and standards. Restrictive governmental standards apply principally to water used for domestic supply, water-contact recreation, and fish and shellfish cultivation. Concentrations lethal or hazardous to animals are cited when they are known. Virtually all uses are thoroughly discussed in the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency report "Water Quality Criteria, 1972." Standards for water used for domestic supplies are given in "Primary Drinking Water Standards" (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, 1975). Authors should be aware also that the goal of the Federal Water Pollution Control Act Amendment of 1972 (PL-92-500) is that the discharge of pollutants into the navigable waters be eliminated by 1985. Biological, biochemical, and radiochemical standards and limits vary for different uses and for different receiving waters. These standards too should be discussed in light of constraints applicable to the study area rather than from broad generalizations. The author is obligated to search out and use criteria and standards currently applicable. Hem (1970) presented a useful guide in the study and interpretation of the chemical characteristics of natural water. Many water-resource reports contain descriptions of the water quality, for example: Iorns and others (1964; 1965), Weeks and others (1974), Bolke and Waddell (1975), Hughes (1975), and Winograd and Thordarson (1975). The author should describe the geochemical properties of the consolidated and unconsolidated rocks through which or over which the water flows and should interpret the resultant changes in water quality. Tabulations of data must be accurate and as nearly uniform and consistent as possible to simplify interpretation by others.

If fluvial sedimentation is considered in the areal report, the discussion will generally define some aspect of erosion, transportation, or deposition. Areal investigations frequently require collection of sufficient data at hydrologic stations to compute sediment-yield rates, which are expressed in weight of dry sediment per unit area per unit of time, for example, tons per square mile per year or its metric equivalent. Sediment-transport rates may also be used to predict rates of deposition in a channel system or a reservoir by converting the weight of dry sedi-

ment to volume, such as acre-feet or cubic meters, on the basis of the specific gravity and particle-size distribution of the sediment in transport and the compaction characteristics of the sediment. Authors should report in detail the equipment and methods used in both field and laboratory measurements of sedimentation; "U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations," book 3, chapters C1 and C2, (Guy, 1970; Guy and Norman, 1970) should be used as principal references in describing these procedures. Precise and consistent terminology is necessary in reports on sedimentation; "siltation," for instance, is not a synonym for "deposition." Terminology with respect to modes of sediment transport and the mechanics of channel behavior should generally conform to that in Manual 54 of the American Society of Civil Engineers (Vanoni, 1975), but its specific application should be defined in the context of the report.

Detailed descriptions of subareas in water-resource reports may aid greatly in applying the facts and conclusions of the report to the determination of conditions in specific localities. Much skill is required in preparing material on each subarea to avoid repetition of general statements and yet to describe adequately the conditions in all parts of each subarea. It is appropriate here to apply the data collected to appraise the water resources or to evaluate hydrologic problems in the subarea. These problems may include different plans of resource development, mutual interference of pumped wells under different spacings and operating schedules, changes in stream regimen resulting from upstream diversions and development, changes in sediment transport caused by changes in land-use patterns, and changes in quality and temperature of water that may accompany its utilization. Carefully selected well, streamflow, sediment, and water-quality data can be given in the sections on subareas, either in the text or in accompanying tables. Generally, data given in the tables should not be repeated in the text, although representative data may be cited to bring out specific points. Likewise, well sections given in detail in graphic form should generally not be duplicated in tabular form. Bulk water-resources data related to projects are usually released in open-file or Water-Resources Investigations reports because publication cost is high. Publication of this type of material as appendixes to the areal report, as a rule, is not acceptable. These limitations point out the need for careful design of data collection during the course of a project. Projects and reports can become hopelessly delayed by the time taken in collecting all available data in a highly developed area, much of which may be superfluous to the study objectives.

Increasingly, emphasis is on quantitative definition of the regional flow system and its controlling conditions, or hydrologically significant subareas within it, rather than on detailed nonquantitative descriptions of type areas or local sites. For information on conditions at a specific site, the reader will probably refer not to a locale description in the text but to information in tables and on maps and graphs. Using this

information, he is able to appraise the prospects of obtaining water in the desired quantity and of necessary chemical quality at any given site. Regional planners find many desirable features in the pictorial-style format, such as the reports by Cohen and others (1968, 1970). By using numerous maps, sections, and graphs, the author of this type of report can show pertinent hydrologic conditions at nearly any desired location and can make his report a most useful reference for both lay and technical readers.

## RESEARCH REPORTS

The research report cannot be defined easily for author guidance because of the wide variety of material represented. The project description, however, is commonly more flexible than that for an areal study, because research by its very nature must have the option of the multiple-hypothesis approach. An exhaustive literature review is usually made in research studies.

The author can communicate a lengthy, complicated mathematical treatment to a much broader technical audience by an accompanying narrative that explains the import of the mathematical sequences presented. Similarly, many complicated relationships can be clarified by carefully designed graphs or diagrams that complement the author's exposition.

Significant figures, whether they are in an areal or in a research report, require careful consideration by the author and should be evaluated for the accuracy he needs to convey. Even the most carefully measured flow of water is seldom within 2 percent accuracy; the value given in the report should be rounded accordingly. Qualitative estimates of regional hydrologic characteristics, such as ground water in storage, may be subject to an error of 25 percent or more. These estimates should certainly be rounded to no more than two significant figures and preferably to one significant figure. See pages 197–202 for further discussion of significant figures.

## REPORTS ON CRITICAL PROBLEMS

In recent years many water-resource reports have focused on selected types of problems of national interest rather than on the general hydrologic conditions of a selected area.

Reports on critical problems are usually generated by a specific water problem that requires a solution but if, as a part of the solution, new principles are developed that could have wide application in other areas or in other phases of hydrology, the research aspect of the investigation may be included in the critical-problem report or published as a separate research paper. The theory on induced infiltration in the

Louisville, Ky., area is an example of such a development (Rorabaugh, 1956, p. 117-125).

## BASIC-DATA REPORTS

Water data are the raw materials used by scientists and engineers for determining the availability, quality, and adequacy of the water resource and for the design, development, and management of major water projects. A significant part of the effort of the Water Resources Division is devoted to the collection, compilation, and timely publication of water data. In recent years, water data have been released in the series of Geological Survey reports titled, "Water-Data Report for [the appropriate State or group of States]." These data were formerly published in Water-Supply Paper series titled "Surface-Water Supply of the United States" (1900-70), "Quality of Surface Waters of the United States" (1941-70), and "Ground-Water Levels in the United States" (1940-74). These reports contain tabulations of discharge (stream-flow), reservoir storage, chemical and biological analyses, sediment determinations, water temperature, water levels, and other related information.

As the number of data-collection sites increases and the variety of types of data collected expands, the use of electronic computers and data banks also grows. Computers, however, have not yet eliminated the need for water-resource data reports in book form. Not many users have access to the appropriate data banks. Publication of data reports serves other necessary purposes: The printed copy provides an archival capability for easy reference, and it releases large quantities of data to a broad audience, at low cost.

### *Data presentation*

Basic-data reporting of the Geological Survey is usually one of two types. The first is specifically designed to make available to every user, without analyses, interpretations, or conclusions, all information collected and processed. These are the data published in the annual series of State reports (see above). The second type presents supporting data in, or released separately as part of, a special or analytical project report. In such a report the data used for exposition are specifically selected to amplify the technical findings of the investigation and to elucidate the basis for decisions or conclusions reached in the technical report.

The introductory pages in the annual series of reports follow a standard format which describes the data-collection and processing program, identifies cooperating agencies, defines technical terms used, cites reports containing data for previous years, advises of supplement-

tary information that can be obtained from office files, and describes any special-data networks and programs. An annual report also presents the hydrologic conditions during the water year. Data reports prepared as part of a project do not generally follow a standard format because the type of data presented differs in accordance with the purpose and scope of the project, usually has a short time span and high areal density, and rarely is part of the basic long-term hydrologic network.

As much of the information as possible is given in tabular form on duplicated printouts from computer storage. Aside from the obvious advantage of giving maximum information in minimum space and eliminating much tedious, repetitive typing, this method provides an opportunity for visual check of figures stored in the computer banks. Tabulated streamflow data generally include daily mean discharges; monthly and yearly summaries of minimum, mean, and maximum daily values; total volumes; and sometimes unit runoff. Reservoir data are often given as daily contents, usually at a specific time. Ground-water levels are usually given at 5-day or less-frequent intervals. Water-quality data include a wide variety of information concerning concentrations of inorganic and organic compounds and biological and physical characteristics.

Supplemental information should accompany the data in tables: (a) the site at which the data are collected should be identified; the simplest and briefest way is by latitude and longitude. The reports should give not only that information necessary for plotting the site on a map, but also enough additional information to find the site in the field by commonly available roads and local landmarks. Changes in the site during the period of data collection should be identified. (b) Political subdivisions and an indication of where the site fits into the general drainage pattern or geologic setting should also be described. (c) The types of information available at a site, together with the time span of each type, should be given. For instance, streamflow or water-level data may be available for a moderately long period, and data for recorded extremes, such as floods or droughts, may be available for an even longer period. Water-quality data, on the other hand, may be available only for short periods. (d) Instrumentation at the site should be described to assist the user in analyzing the completeness and reliability of the data. Recording instruments provide detailed records of measurements and thus are more useful in interpreting the data than is information collected intermittently. (e) Conditions of streamflow or water level at the site and the use to be made of the data determine the measurement frequency.

Data reports, in addition to documenting the water information, should be flexible in content. Their scope should be reviewed periodically to determine whether the information answers the changing data needs of the Nation. Two general examples of the presentation of well descriptions and water-level data are shown below.

SAMPLE TABLE F.—Records of boreholes screened in Gwandu Formation, Sokoto Basin

Location: Name of village in or near which corresponding borehole is located.  
 Borehole: Serial numbers are assigned by Geological Survey of Nigeria (GSN) to all boreholes in northern Nigeria.  
 Approximate elevation: Measured by aneroid barometer from nearby Federal Surveys bench marks.  
 Casing: American Petroleum Institute line pipe (mild steel casing) used to case most boreholes.  
 Screen: Most screens are of Johnson Everdur. Setting indicates top and bottom of borehole screen.

Static pressure head: Pressure head at time borehole was completed, in feet above (+) or below (-) land surface.  
 Yield: At time borehole was drilled. F, natural flow; P, turbine pump; A, airlift pump.  
 Remarks: M, borehole drilled by Ministry of Works for public water supply; C, chemical analysis in table 7; T, flow or pumping test carried out at borehole; A, abandoned test hole, casing pulled and hole plugged; B, borehole drilled by Balakhany (Overseas), Ltd.; O, observation borehole drilled by Balakhany (Overseas), Ltd., for the Geological Survey of Nigeria; F, Foxboro pressure recorder installed; S, Stevens water-stage recorder installed.

Location	Borehole	Approximate elevation (feet above sea level)	Date completed	Casing diameter (inches)	Total depth (feet below land surface)	Screen		Static pressure head	Yield (gallons per hour)	Draw-down (feet)	Remarks
						Diameter (inches)	Setting (feet below land surface)				
Birnin Kebbi -----	GSN 2480	674	9-10-61	6	250	6	170-230	-----	+13	{ 2,200 F 9,000 P }	----- M
Rafin Kubu -----	2499	787	8- 8-64	3	465	1 3/4	436-451	10	+39	2,000 F	0.55 B, C, T
Tapkin Kwato -----	2500	780	9- 2-64	3	590	1 3/4	560-575	10	+52	3,000 F	----- B
Bacaka -----	2674	803	10- 9-64	2 1/2	1,005	1 3/4	979-994	10	+40	1,200 F	21 B, C, T
Balle -----	3051	750	5- 3-63	2 1/2	279	1 3/4	253-269	10	+51	1,200 F	----- C, O
Do -----	3052	750	5-29-63	2 1/2	398	-----	350-393	Open hole	+70	12,000 F	----- A, O
Do -----	3054	782	9- 9-63	6	520	3 3/4	514-519	15	+46	7,000 F	.7 C, T, O
Do -----	3055	782	9-23-63	6	376	3 3/4	367-372	15	+46	5,000 F	7 C, F, T, O
Kurdula -----	3056	760	10-13-63	2 1/2	858	1 3/4	820-835	15	+83	3,000 F	----- C, F, O, T
Do -----	3057	760	10-31-63	6 3/8	255	1 3/4	237-255	15	+40	250 A	----- O
Tangaza -----	3058	845	3- 9-64	2 1/2	302	1 3/4	189-199	10	+2	{ 90 F 2,100 A }	----- A, O
Do -----	3059	847	3-19-64	6 3/8, 4, 2 1/2	219	1 3/4	172-197	10	0	6,000 P	46 C, S, T, O
Do -----	3060	847	3-29-64	3	177	1 3/4	175-185	10	0	1,900 A	----- O
Yeidu -----	3061	785	5- 5-64	2 1/2	660	1 3/4	520-530	10	-27	1,500 A	48 A, O
Do -----	3062	745	5-16-64	3	540	1 3/4	520-530	10	+13	{ 1,200 F 2,000 A }	----- O
Do -----	3063	744	5-28-64	6, 4, 2 1/2	540	3 1/2	508-523	10	+15	{ 1,200 F 4,200 A }	48 } C, F, T, O

SAMPLE TABLE G.—*Well descriptions and water-level measurements*

[Water levels are reported in feet below land-surface datum unless otherwise indicated. Barometric leveling is used in referencing land-surface datum]

## Adams County

43758N0894900.1. Local number Ad-17/6/8-2. Wisconsin Conservation Dept. Jetted observation water-table well in sand of Pleistocene age, diam 2 in, depth 21 ft, cased to 19, well point 19-21. Lsd 955 ft above msl. MP top of casing, 1.70 ft above lsd. Highest water level 12.58 below lsd, July 11, 1960; lowest 18.05 below lsd, Apr. 6, 1959. Records available: 1952-70. Well destroyed; measurement discontinued. Replaced by well AD-17/6/8-76.

Date	Water level						
Jan. 30, 1967	16.09	Dec. 26, 1967	15.99	Nov. 25, 1968	14.95	Oct. 27, 1969	14.66
Feb. 27	16.43	Jan. 29, 1968	16.21	Dec. 31	15.26	Nov. 24	14.82
Mar. 27	16.74	Feb. 26	16.39	Jan. 27, 1969	15.54	Dec. 29	15.22
Apr. 3	16.71	Mar. 25	16.62	Feb. 24	15.75	Jan. 26, 1970	15.56
May 1	16.34	Apr. 15	16.70	Mar. 24	15.90	Feb. 23	15.93
June 6	15.98	May 13	16.58	Apr. 7	15.74	Mar. 30	16.20
July 3	15.60	June 3	16.27	May 5	15.06	Apr. 20	16.25
Aug. 28	15.50	July 1	15.98	June 2	14.53	May 4	16.21
Sept. 25	15.61	Aug. 5	15.36	July 7	14.07	June 1	15.99
Oct. 30	15.76	Sept. 9	15.25	Aug. 25	14.07	July 6	15.28
Nov. 27	15.85	Oct. 7	14.96	Sept. 29	14.44	Aug. 10	15.25

*Real-time data*

The development of the satellite-relay program, the increasing availability of computer-terminal outlets, and the land-line systems of transmitting data from field-observation sites to computers and to field offices enable users to obtain current records in an extremely short time. Although printouts can be assembled for publication, they quickly become historic because of normal publication delay. A system incorporating either a satellite relay or a land-time system provides data indicating conditions at the station at the time of inquiry. Data entering the computer are almost immediately available to users through terminal networks and also become available for future compilation and interpretation. Because communication technology is changing rapidly, the manner in which data are collected and released and data reports are prepared and disseminated is expected to change significantly in the future. The general guidelines for handling water-resources data, as briefly described in this section, therefore, may also become largely outdated in a few years.

## WATER-RESOURCE TERMS

Some water-resource terms have been used with different meanings in water reports so frequently that it seems advisable to call attention to them. As Meinzer stated (1923, p. 2), a scientific term is a symbol that represents a scientific concept. The term has the same significance as the definition of the concept; it is neither more nor less precise. However, there should be general agreement on the meaning of the term. The "Glossary of Geology" of Gary and others (1972) contains many

water-resource terms. Other references on hydrologic terminology include Langbein and Iseri (1960), largely for surface-water terms; Meinzer (1923), Lohman (1972), and Lohman and others (1972) for ground-water terms; Poland and others (1972) for terms related to mechanics of aquifers and land subsidence; the "U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations" series for water-quality terms; Betts and others (1962) for terms pertaining to hydraulics; and Vanoni (1975) for sedimentation terms.

## REFERENCES

- Betts, C. A., Cantine, T. R., Rutter, E. J., and Blaisdell, F. W. (members of Task Force), 1962, Nomenclature for hydraulics: American Society of Civil Engineers Manuals and Reports on Engineering Practice 43, 501 p.
- Report by the Task Force on Nomenclature for Hydraulics, of the Committee on Hydraulic Structures of the Hydraulics Division of the American Society of Civil Engineers. Gives abbreviations, units of measurement, symbols, and glossary of terms.
- Bolke, E. L., and Waddell, K. M., 1975, Chemical quality and temperature of water in Flaming Gorge Reservoir, Wyoming and Utah, and the effect of the reservoir on the Green River: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2039-A, 26 p.
- Cohen, Philip, Franke, O. L., and Foxworthy, B. L., 1968, An atlas of Long Island's water resources: New York Water Resources Commission Bulletin 62, 117 p.
- 1970, Water for the future of Long Island, New York: New York Water Resources Commission Bulletin 62A, 36 p.
- Gary, Margaret, McAfee, Robert, Jr., and Wolf, C. L., eds., 1972, Glossary of geology: Washington, American Geological Institute, 805 p.
- Guy, H. P., 1970, Fluvial sediment concepts: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, 55 p.
- Guy, H. P., and Norman, V. W., 1970, Field methods for measurement of fluvial sediment, chap. C2 of bk. 3, Applications of hydraulics: U.S. Geological Survey Techniques of Water-Resources Investigations, 59 p.
- Hem, J. D., 1970, Study and interpretation of the chemical characteristics of natural water (2d ed.): U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1473, 363 p.
- Hughes, J. L., 1975, Evaluation of ground-water degradation resulting from waste disposal to alluvium near Barstow, California: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 878, 33 p.
- Iorns, W. V., Hembree, C. H., and Oakland, G. L., 1965, Water resources of the upper Colorado River Basin—technical report: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 441, 370 p.
- Iorns, W. V., Hembree, C. H., Phoenix, D. A., and Oakland, C. L., 1964, Water resources of the upper Colorado River Basin—basic data: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 442, 1,036 p.
- Langbein, W. B., and Iseri, K. T., 1960, General introduction and hydrologic definitions: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1541-A, 29 p.

- Lohman, S. W., 1972, Ground-water hydraulics: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 708, 70 p.
- Lohman, S. W., and others, 1972, Definitions of selected terms—revisions and conceptual refinements: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1988, 21 p.
- Meinzer, O. E., 1923, Outline of ground-water hydrology: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 494, 68 p.
- Poland, J. F., Lofgren, B. E., and Riley, F. S., 1972, Glossary of selected terms useful in studies of the mechanics of aquifer systems and land subsidence due to fluid withdrawal: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 2025, 9 p.
- Rorabaugh, M. I., 1956, Ground water in northeastern Louisville, Kentucky: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1360-B, 168 p.
- U. S. Environmental Protection Agency, 1972, Water quality criteria, 1972; A report of the Committee on Water Quality Criteria: Washington, Environmental Studies Board, National Academy of Sciences and the National Academy of Engineering, 594 p.
- 1975, National interim primary drinking water regulations: Federal Register, v. 40, no. 248, p. 50566-59588.
- Vanoni, V. A., ed., 1975, Sedimentation engineering: American Society of Civil Engineers Manuals and Reports on Engineering Practice 54, 745 p.
- Weeks, J. B., Leavesley, G. H., Welder, F. A., and Saulnier, Jr., G. J., 1974, Simulated effects of oil-shale development on the hydrology of Piceance Basin, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 908, 84 p.
- Winograd, I. J., and Thordarson, William, 1975, Hydrogeologic and hydrochemical framework, south-central Great Basin, Nevada-California \* \* \*: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 712-C, p. C1-C126.

## ADDITIONAL READING

- Britton, L. J., Averett, R. C., and Ferreira, R. F., 1975, An introduction to the processes, problems, and management of urban lakes: U.S. Geological Survey Circular 601-K, 22 p.
- U.S. Department of the Interior Office of Water Resources Research, 1977, Thesaurus of water resources terms (2d ed.): 375 p.

# MINERAL RESERVES AND RESOURCES

By DONALD A. BROBST

Accepted and acceptable definitions of mineral reserves and resources generally are not included in standard dictionaries. The definitions commonly vary with time and the perspective of individual authors, and they tend to differ with the kind of commodity described. Reserves and resources of metallic ore deposits, liquid or gaseous fuels, coal and water each may be discussed in quite different terms. Some of the terms have gained wide acceptance, although their use by different authors commonly has been marked by a vagueness that makes precise comparison of the data difficult. More uniform use of reserve and resource terminology is critical to better communication on this subject.

To meet growing needs, McKelvey (1972) proposed a unified terminology for mineral resources that was modified by Brobst and Pratt (1973, p. 1-8). In 1974, the staffs of the Geological Survey and the Bureau of Mines further altered the earlier proposals and jointly adopted the mineral-resource classification shown in figure 4 (U.S. Bureau of Mines and U.S. Geological Survey, 1976a). This classification is expected to be applicable to all mineral commodities; its use in reports is urged, although some other special terms may be adopted to deal with specific problems peculiar to certain commodities, such as oil, gas, and coal.

The distinction between **reserves** and **resources** is based on current geologic and economic factors. Thus, total mineral resources are classified in terms of both economic feasibility and the degree of assurance of their occurrence (fig. 4). Total resources also are divided into two major fields, identified and undiscovered resources, which in turn are subdivided. The definitions of the reserve and resource terms below are quoted or paraphrased from U.S. Bureau of Mines and U.S. Geological Survey (1976a, b).

**Resource:** A concentration of naturally occurring solid, liquid, or gaseous materials in or on the earth's crust in such form that economic extraction of a commodity is currently or potentially feasible.

**Identified resources:** Specific bodies of mineral-bearing material whose location, quality, and quantity are known from geologic evidence supported by engineering measurements with respect to the demonstrated category.

**Undiscovered resources:** Unspecified bodies of mineral-bearing material whose existence is surmised on the basis of broad geologic knowledge and theory.

**Reserve:** That portion of the identified resource from which a usable mineral or energy commodity can be economically and legally extracted at the time of determination. The term **ore** is also used for reserves of some minerals.

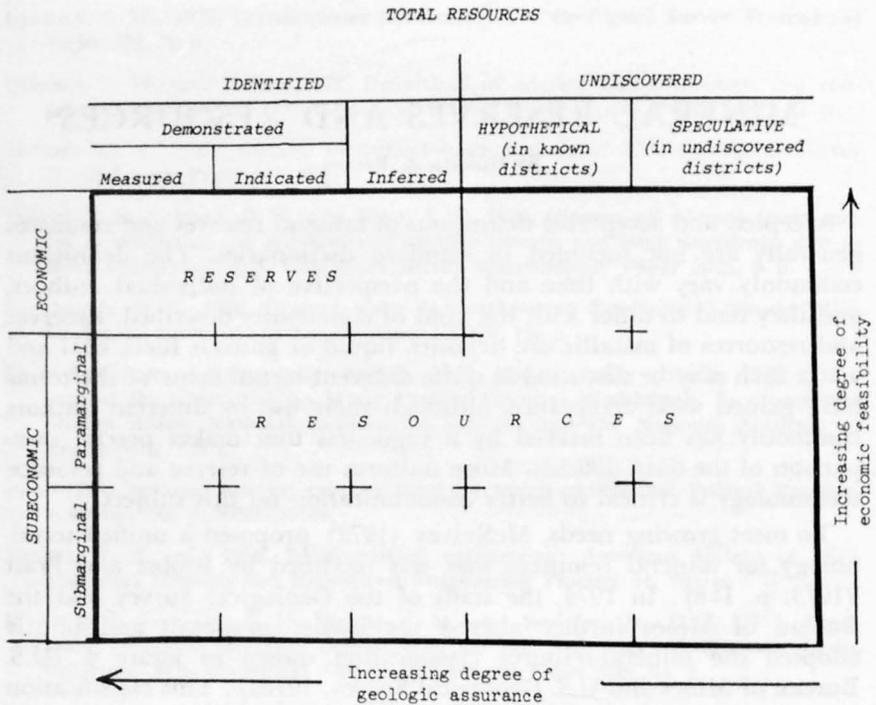


FIGURE 4.—Classification of Mineral Resources. From U.S. Bureau of Mines and U.S. Geological Survey (1967a, p. A2).

The following definitions for “measured,” “indicated,” and “inferred” are applicable to both identified economic resources (that is, reserves) and identified-subeconomic resources.

**Measured:** Material whose quality and quantity have been estimated, within a margin of error of less than 20 percent, from analyses and measurements from closely spaced and geologically well-known sample sites.

**Indicated:** Material whose quality and quantity have been estimated partly from sample analyses and measurements and partly from reasonable geologic projections.

**Demonstrated:** A collective term for the sum of materials in both measured and indicated resources.

**Inferred:** Material in unexplored but identified deposits whose quality and size have been estimated on the basis of geologic evidence and projection.

**Identified-subeconomic resources:** Known deposits not now economically minable.

**Paramarginal:** The portion of subeconomic resources that (a) is almost economically producible or (b) is not commercially available solely because of legal or political circumstances.

**Submarginal:** The portion of subeconomic resources which would require a substantially higher price (more than 1.5 times the price at the time of determination) or a major cost-reducing advance in technology to become economic.

**Hypothetical resources:** Undiscovered materials that may reasonably be expected to exist in a known mining district under known geologic conditions. Explora-

tion that confirms their existence and reveals quantity and quality will permit their reclassification as a reserve or identified-subeconomic resource.

**Speculative resources:** Undiscovered materials that may occur either in known types of deposits in a favorable geologic setting where no discoveries have been made or in as-yet-unknown types of deposits that remain to be recognized. Exploration that confirms their existence and reveals quantity and quality will permit their reclassification as reserves or identified-subeconomic resources.

The terms "proved," "probable," and "possible" (used by industry for economic evaluations of ore in specific deposits or districts) commonly have been used loosely and interchangeably with the terms "measured," "indicated," or "inferred" (used by the Department of the Interior mainly for regional or national estimates). "Proved" and "measured" are essentially synonymous. "Probable" and "possible," however, are not synonymous with "indicated" and "inferred." "Probable" and "possible" describe estimates of partly sampled deposits. In some definitions, for example, "probable" is used to describe deposits sampled on two or three sides and "possible" for deposits sampled only on one side; in the Bureau of Mines/Geological Survey definitions, both types of deposits would be described by the term "indicated."

Except in rare instances, the author's estimates of reserves and resources for a district or area should be presented in such a way as to conceal the figures for individual properties. Quotation of published estimates, however, is permissible so long as they are properly ascribed.

## REFERENCES

- Brobst, D. A., and Pratt, W. P., eds., 1973, United States mineral resources: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 820, 722 p.
- McKelvey, V. E., 1972 Mineral resource estimates and public policy: *American Scientist*, v. 60, no. 1, p. 32-40; reprinted in Brobst and Pratt, 1973, p. 9-19.
- U.S. Bureau of Mines and U.S. Geological Survey, 1976a, Principles of the mineral resource classification system of the U.S. Bureau of Mines and U.S. Geological Survey: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1450-A, p. A1-A5.
- 1976b, Coal resources classification of the U.S. Bureau of Mines and U.S. Geological Survey: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1450-B, p. B1-B7.

# STRATIGRAPHIC NOMENCLATURE AND DESCRIPTION

By MARJORIE E. MACLACHLAN and GEORGE V. COHEE

The rocks of the United States are classified by means of a complex scheme. Most of the time terms that are applied (for example, Cretaceous) were first defined and used by European geologists and have since been accepted by geologists of most other parts of the world. However, as parts of the United States were mapped geologically, it became common practice to also apply local names to the smaller divisions of rocks recognized in individual study areas. Lithology, rather than faunal assemblages, is the basis of this local classification. The principal reason for using lithologic divisions is to aid the field geologist in recognizing and mapping the units. These lithologic divisions are called rock-stratigraphic units by the American Commission on Stratigraphic Nomenclature (1970, p. 5) or geologic names by many geologists in the United States (Gary and others, 1972, p. 292); lithostratigraphic units, much used outside the United States, are the division terms preferred by the International Subcommittee on Stratigraphic Classification (1976, p. 31). Some rock-stratigraphic units may also be faunal units because of accident of selection of the boundary between two lithologies. Uncertainties in interpretation of the original definition of a local lithologic unit, or of its correlation with units nearby or many kilometers away, have resulted in a large number of locally named units, and their number increases steadily each year.

Because the U.S. Geological Survey is officially charged with examination of various aspects of geology throughout the United States, all its publications must adhere to some broadly uniform procedures in dealing with the nomenclature and classification of local rock units. The responsibility for this uniformity is delegated to a group of Survey geologists who are chosen for their experience and knowledge in the science; the group is called the Geologic Names Committee (GNC, or the Committee). Except for papers intended for open file and those on astrogeology, every manuscript that is written by a Survey author and that contains stratigraphic names is read and approved by a member of the staff of GNC before its publication is authorized by the Director.

## GEOLOGIC NAMES COMMITTEE

The Geologic Names Committee was first organized on February 17, 1899, to consider all names of geologic formations or other divisions of rock classifications with a view of determining whether they comply with the rules of nomenclature adopted for the Survey publications and to recommend such action as might be advisable in any individual case to secure unity of nomenclature under the rules.

Members of the Committee are appointed by the Chief Geologist and are responsible to him through authority delegated by the Director. In addition to the chairman, stationed at the Geological Survey's National Center in Reston, Va., and a secretary (chosen from the review staff at the National Center), the Committee currently consists of 10 geologists as regular members (four in Reston, Va., three in Denver, Colo., and three in Menlo Park, Calif.) supported by (a) advisory specialists, (b) the Geologic Names Review Staff, and (c) the Lexicon of Geologic Names Staff. In addition to an office in Reston, the review staff maintains two field offices, one in Denver and one in Menlo Park. The lexicon staff maintains one office, in Reston.

The Geologic Names Committee is responsible for defining and recommending policy and rules governing stratigraphic nomenclature for the entire Geological Survey, subject to guidance and approval by the Chief Geologist. Through its review staff, it is responsible for the technical review of domestic stratigraphic nomenclature and classification in all manuscripts and maps originating in the U.S. Geological Survey, whether they are to be published by the Survey or by an outside organization and whether they result in whole or in part from the official work of Geological Survey members. Stratigraphic classification used by Survey authors in reports dealing with the geology of foreign countries is reviewed only for consistency within each report.

The Geologic Names Committee is not responsible for defining and recommending policy and rules governing stratigraphic nomenclature, in Survey manuscripts, for bodies other than the Earth. Such geologic names are considered to be informal; naming, cataloging, and coordinating astrogeologic units, as well as review of Survey manuscripts that name such units, are handled by the Branch of Astrogeologic Studies in Flagstaff, Ariz.

The basis of the Committee's consideration is the "Code of Stratigraphic Nomenclature" (the Code), written by the American Commission on Stratigraphic Nomenclature (ACSN). The ACSN currently has more than 20 members chosen from eight geological societies and State and Federal surveys in North America (American Association of Petroleum Geologists, Geological Society of America, Geological Survey of Canada, U.S. Geological Survey, American Association of State Geologists, Asociación Mexicana de Geólogos Petroleros, Sociedad Geológica Mexicana, and Instituto de Geología de la Universidad

Nacional Autónoma de México). Several editions of the Code have been printed since it was first prepared in 1933; the most recent edition appeared in 1970 and is for sale by the American Association of Petroleum Geologists, Box 979, Tulsa, OK 74101. Amendments and additions to the Code are proposed from time to time. Depending on the subject matter, they are published as ACSN Notes either in the "American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin" (see, for instance, Oriol, 1975, p. 134-135) or in the "Geological Society of America Bulletin." Before the proposed changes are adopted by the Commission for inclusion in the Code, comments and discussions are invited from the geologic profession.

When major departures from official classification and nomenclature are proposed in manuscripts and are brought before the full Committee for consideration, specialists may be invited by the chairman to act as temporary members of the Geologic Names Committee.

The classification and nomenclature of rock units in manuscripts embodying the results of cooperative investigations with State geological surveys or other outside organizations accord with the official classification and nomenclature unless such manuscripts are to be published by the cooperating organization. Subject to approval of the Director, the author may use the classification of the cooperating organization, with an appropriate statement of explanation.

The Committee does not pass judgment on the validity or use of any name outside the publications of the U.S. Geological Survey. However, its records of stratigraphic names used by Survey and non-Survey geologists are available for reference at all times to all geologists; they may seek advice in person or by correspondence. If a geologist, either Survey or non-Survey, expresses his intention to use a geographic name that has not been previously applied to a rock-stratigraphic unit, a record can be made to reserve the name so that others who may inquire about the name can be informed of the first author's intention.

In reviewing manuscripts, review staff members depend on a file of annotated records, on the framework of policy and objectives as set forth by the Committee and its chairman, and on the "Code of Stratigraphic Nomenclature." Each staff member is expected to recognize significant departures from these guides and to bring them to the attention of the chairman of the Committee and to the local Committee members that they may attempt expeditious resolution of a problem at a local level. When such problems are not resolvable locally, the full Committee meets to consider whether the departures should be adopted as new official usage, approved for use in a particular manuscript without prejudice to official usage, or rejected.

The annotated records in the review staff offices are maintained as a file separate from the one maintained by the lexicon staff. The review staff file provides an accurate, timely record of stratigraphic names as used by Survey geologists, and this record reflects official acceptance by the Survey.

Through its lexicon staff, the Geologic Names Committee has for many years maintained a separate file that contains the systematic records of names of stratigraphic units in the United States as they have been used in all the published geologic literature of the United States. However, "Publication in abstracts, guidebooks, microfilms \* \* \* is not a valid publication" (art. 3 of the Code), and no records of such usage are kept. (See p. 146, 147 for restriction on use of new names in open-file reports.)

Lexicon staff members are responsible for the compilation and recording of the published literature. Their file on each stratigraphic unit includes up-to-date information on its type locality, lithology, thickness, age assignment, and history of usage. Copies of this file are kept at the National Center and in the review staff offices in Denver and Menlo Park.

Information compiled for this file prior to 1967 is available in the following publications: Wilmarth (1938), Wilson and others (1957; 1959), Keroher and others (1966), and Keroher (1970).

## CONFORMANCE TO THE CODE AND STRATIGRAPHIC CHANGE

Accuracy and clarity are the two main objectives in all written and graphic presentation of stratigraphic data. A common initial procedure followed by a review staff member when a stratigraphic report is turned in for review is to disassemble it and place the geologic-map explanation and the stratigraphic chart alongside the geology section of the text. As the geology section is read, it can easily be compared with the other two parts. An assessment can be made at this time concerning stratigraphic changes and conformance with the Code. The reviewer then returns to the abstract and reads the report in sequence. The author may follow the same procedure as a double check before he turns the report in for review.

The official nomenclature file can be updated, modified, or augmented whenever a report that adequately explains the reasons for a stratigraphic change is submitted for publication. Obviously, the changes added to the official Survey file of annotated records are those recommended by Survey authors on the basis of their work. Because the Survey adopts a uniform nomenclature for any one area, it is advisable for the person planning to make the change to discuss his proposals with a review staff member and with his peers, especially those working near the report area, before the report is completed.

A review staff member will carefully read comments by technical reviewers of all major stratigraphic reports. Inattention to previous and current work of others in the author's Division or in other Divisions may impede the progress of a report.

The present Code (1970) includes classification schemes for (a) rock-stratigraphic, (b) soil-stratigraphic, (c) biostratigraphic, (d) time-

stratigraphic, (e) geologic-time, and (f) geologic-climate units. The primary responsibility of a review staff member is to ensure the use of formal (which means "defined as explained in the Code, art. 4-17") names of rock-stratigraphic units. Biostratigraphic units are not part of the review staff's responsibility; such units are checked by specialists in the Survey's Branch of Paleontology and Stratigraphy.

Study of the "Listing of Nomenclatural Changes" from Cohee and Wright (1975), particularly the "Revision and reference" columns (p. A3-A49) will acquaint the prospective author with the types of stratigraphic changes that are added to the official Survey records. They may be categorized as (a) new name defined and adopted, (b) previously defined name to be adopted, (c) change in age designation, (d) abandoned name, (e) change in lithologic designation, (f) stratigraphic redefinition, (g) assignment to another stratigraphic unit, (h) change in stratigraphic rank, (i) geographic extension or restriction, and (j) reinstatement of abandoned name. Some of the categories require more justification than others. Publication of the information is mandatory, and the first report to use the information must explain the change or changes. An author should not discuss, in print, stratigraphic changes that he or one of his peers plans to make at some time in the future. Since the early 1960's, more than 7,000 changes and additions have been made to the official Survey records. No one publication can possibly keep an author up-to-date; therefore, he must be certain that he has the most recent information on the rock-stratigraphic units in his study area.

The published lexicon volumes should not be quoted as the authority in stratigraphic discussions. Reference should be made to the original article upon which the data in the lexicon are based.

### *New names*

Survey authors planning to define a new rock-stratigraphic unit should read the appropriate articles of the Code that list the requirements for new names. All formal geologic names are binomial. The first part is a geographic name. It should be the name of a river, town, or other natural or artificial feature at or near the place where the unit is typically developed. In selecting the geographic name for a new unit, reference should be made to the established geographic names on Survey topographic maps.

An author should send to the National Center, the Denver, or the Menlo Park review staff office, at the earliest possible date, a list of the geographic names and the areas for which the new stratigraphic names are to be proposed. The names will be checked against the lexicon, official Survey, and reserved-name files and, if the names are not preoccupied, they will be reserved. If the names are preoccupied, the author has an opportunity to select other names before the report is complete.

When new names are to be established for rock-stratigraphic units in areas where geographic features have not been named, application to establish the new geographic name should be made through the author's local Division reports unit. Application forms and instructions for proposing new geographic names are supplied to the reports units by the U.S. Board on Geographic Names. Proposals for new geographic names should be made by the author at an early stage in the preparation of a report.

The report in which the new name is defined should contain:

1. A statement of intent such as, "This unit is here named \* \* \* "
2. Name of the geographic feature from which the name was taken
3. Specific designation and location of a type section, locality, or area
4. Description of the upper and lower contacts, the lithology, and the areal extent of the unit
5. The age and correlation of the unit

If an author believes that the Survey should adopt for rocks in his study area a stratigraphic name that has been previously defined but has not been approved for use in Survey reports, he should (a) include a statement of intent, such as, "This unit, named by Smith in 1970, is here adopted," and (b) give a brief summary of Smith's description of the stratigraphic unit.

### *Changes in age designations*

Changes in age designations of fossiliferous Phanerozoic rocks and their correlatives are subject to the approval of specialists in the Branch of Paleontology and Stratigraphy. Radiometric age determinations are judged by specialists in the Branch of Isotope Geology. The reasons for the age change should be stated in the report. As a note of caution, the author is reminded that the definition of a rock-stratigraphic unit is "independent of time concepts" (art. 4(d) of the Code). Thus a rock-stratigraphic unit may be assigned to two or more systems or to two or more series.

### *Abandoned names*

If the name of a rock-stratigraphic unit is to be abandoned, the author should state why and, if appropriate, give the name of the unit or units replacing the abandoned name. The name is referred to in subsequent reports as being obsolete, abandoned, or of former usage, or it is preceded by a dagger (†).

### *Changes in lithologic designation*

Changes in lithologic designation are necessary when the rocks between the upper and lower contacts of a formally defined rock-stratigraphic unit vary areally in lithologic composition. Lithologic change over great distances may be due to depositional or postdepositional causes: For example, a sandstone may change to a quartzite, or a limestone to a dolomite, or a sandstone to a series of interbedded sandstone and shale. The lithologic description in the text is the place to delineate this change. The Survey prefers a lithologic designation to the word "formation" because it is more meaningful; when a rock-stratigraphic unit is more than 50 percent of a certain lithology, such as sandstone, it should be called sandstone and not formation. However, if a unit is composed of a mixture of lithologies, for example, sandstone and shale beds, the term "formation" can be used.

### *Stratigraphic redefinition*

Redefinition of rock-stratigraphic units is the most complex and difficult change for an author to make. Many units have been redefined several times in various publications. The reader must then acquaint himself with each redefinition and, in his report, he must state whose redefinition he is following. Under extreme conditions it may be wisest to raise the stratigraphic rank or to abandon the unit.

### *Assignment to another stratigraphic unit*

Regionally, a named member may extend from one formation into another, especially in areas where complex intertonguing takes place (art. 5 (e) and 7 (b) of the Code); the component formations of a group may also change (art. 9 (b) of the Code). The geographic limits and the reasons for the new assignment should be included in the discussion of the stratigraphic unit.

### *Change in stratigraphic rank*

A formation may become a member of another formation, and a formation may become a group or vice versa (art. 16 of the Code). If a change in stratigraphic rank is required, the author should clearly give the areal limits of the rank change as well as the reasons for the change. Units of group rank must be divisible into two or more parts of formation rank, and each part must be given a formal name. A formation need not be divisible into formally named parts.

*Geographic extension or restriction*

Some rock-stratigraphic units can be recognized and mapped in several States; others are limited to very small areas. The name for a defined unit can be extended to separate rock bodies if they are believed to be homotaxial (art. 4(b) of the Code). A report should include all available information concerning the geographic extent of named units.

*Reinstatement of an abandoned name*

On rare occasions, an abandoned name needs to be reinstated. This procedure is acceptable if the reinstatement will not cause confusion, if the original definition of the name is valid, and if the geographic name has not been applied to another stratigraphic unit. These points should be discussed with other geologists having knowledge of the area. A check of the name in the lexicon and review staff files is also necessary.

## STRATIGRAPHIC DESCRIPTIONS

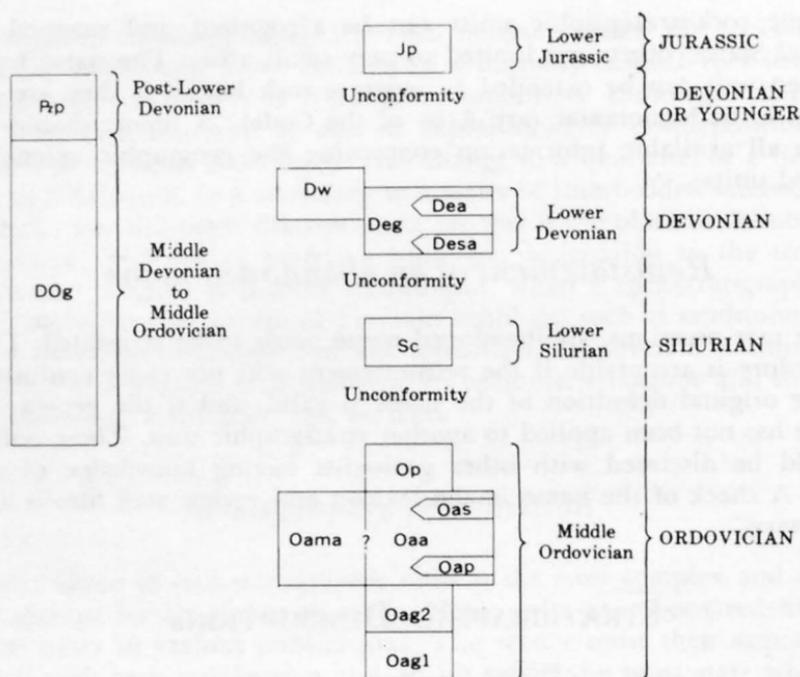
*Text matter*

In geologic reports the stratigraphy of an area is usually discussed chronologically, the oldest formation first and the youngest last. This usage does not necessarily apply to the order of discussion of strata penetrated in oil or water wells.

For all nomenclature changes, all the steps outlined in the Code for a particular change must be followed. If an abstract accompanies the report, the reader may benefit from inclusion of a summary of the stratigraphic changes being proposed. Those who read the abstract first may be enticed to read further if they know the full content of the report.

Usage of terms should be consistent, and the accepted term must be used throughout the report in referring to the study area. In paragraph headings, on maps, and for the first use of the name in a paragraph, the full formal name should be used. Confusion arises when geologic units with names like "Dakota" refer to a sandstone in most areas but to a quartzite in other areas, or when the Dakota in most areas is designated of formation rank but of a group rank in other areas. The Raritan Formation is an example of another type of geologic name that may cause confusion. It is divided into the Lloyd Sand Member (formal) and a clay member (informal). If frequent repetition of the term is necessary within a paragraph, a variation in style may be desirable, such as the Lloyd Member of the Raritan or the Lloyd.

## CORRELATION OF MAP UNITS



## DESCRIPTION OF MAP UNITS

Jp

**PORTLAND FORMATION (JURASSIC)**—Chiefly moderate-reddish-brown-weathering, thin-bedded, medium- to coarse-grained arkosic sandstone; minor siltstone and shale. Subordinate lenses of conglomerate 0.5-1.0 m thick in exposures southeast of Wilbraham near eastern border of unit. Most conglomerate clasts are pebbles or cobbles of pegmatite (Pzp below) or Glastonbury Gneiss (DOg below). Ratio of conglomerate to sandstone + siltstone + shale typically greater than 1:3 in exposures east of Wilbraham, less than 1:30 in exposures west of Stoney Hill Road School

Pzp

**PEGMATITE (POST-LOWER DEVONIAN)**—White to light-gray, weakly foliated to unfoliated sills, dikes, and irregularly shaped bodies consisting of quartz and feldspars with accessory muscovite, black tourmaline, sulfides, garnet, apatite, and rare beryl. Pegmatite bodies within Glastonbury Gneiss chiefly unfoliated. Locally they contain pink feldspar and smoky quartz crystals as large as 16-25 cm in longest dimension.

FIGURE 5.—Part of a typical map explanation. Abstracted from Pepper (1977).

*Explanations for geologic maps*

Rock-stratigraphic units on map explanations are arranged in vertical column (s) and in chronologic sequence, the youngest unit at the

## ERVING FORMATION (LOWER DEVONIAN)

Deg

Generally gray-weathering biotite granofels interlayered locally with more abundant gray- and brownish-gray-weathering muscovite-biotite schist—Very minor amounts of very light gray quartz plagioclase-hornblende-garnet-sphene granofels and hornblende-plagioclase amphibolite. Biotite granofels is thinly to thickly parted and medium grained with mineral percentages as follows: quartz (30-50), plagioclase (20-45), biotite (20-30), garnet (1-3), and muscovite (1). Schist is medium- to coarse-grained, well-foliated, and consists of quartz (30-45), plagioclase (2-40), muscovite (15-35), biotite (5-20), garnet (1-3), and kyanite (3) with accessory potassium feldspar, chlorite, and apatite. Rectangular knots of very pale green muscovite and kyanite (0.6 mm in width), and knots and stringers of translucent quartz are characteristic of the schist

Dea

Thinly to thickly parted, medium- to coarse-grained hornblende-plagioclase amphibolite—Amphibolite contains minor amounts of epidote, sphene, and chlorite. Unit locally encloses minor thin layers of pink garnet-quartz rock (coticule) and plagioclase-quartz-biotite-hornblende-epidote gneiss

Desa

Generally hornblende-plagioclase amphibolite—Interlayered locally with more abundant rusty-weathering quartz-plagioclase-biotite gneiss and plagioclase-quartz gneisses containing variable amounts of hornblende, biotite, and garnet

Sc

CLOUGH QUARTZITE (LOWER SILURIAN)—White to light-tan, thinly layered quartzite and quartz-muscovite gneiss. A band of quartzite Sc is discontinuously exposed and is mapped at the base of amphibolite of the Erving Formation on the hill west and northwest of Worthington Pond, near the southern border of the Hampden quadrangle. Unit is exposed discontinuously for a distance of 100 m, in a band about 10 m wide, on the southwest slope of Mt. Marcy in the adjacent Ludlow 7½-minute quadrangle (Leo and others, 1977)

Op

PARTRIDGE FORMATION (UPPER MIDDLE ORDOVICIAN)—Rusty-weathering quartz-plagioclase-muscovite-biotite-(kyanite)-(garnet) schist interlayered with subordinate but appreciable quartz-feldspar-biotite-(hornblende)-(garnet) gneiss (30 percent) hornblende-plagioclase amphibolite (20 percent), and local quartz-garnet granofels. Schist weathers light brown and rusty moderate reddish brown, is medium to coarse grained, and well foliated, and contains accessory apatite, graphite, sulfide, and retrograde chlorite. Gneiss is medium grained, light to medium gray, and rusty weathering, and forms thinly to thickly parted, slabby layers

FIGURE 5.—Continued.

top and the oldest at the base (fig. 5). This arrangement is in contrast to the one recommended for the texts of geologic reports. Separate boxes in separate columns, but in the same horizontal position, are necessary where rock units of the same age have different names. Boxes in the explanation should be drawn as simply as possible, so the reader

can readily distinguish the map unit by symbol and color and can recognize its relationships to other units in the map area. Complex intertonguing of rock-stratigraphic units can be shown in a separate diagram below the explanation. If the relationship is unknown or uncertain, the map units may be enclosed by a brace and the uncertainty indicated at the right side of the brace. In the vertical column(s), boxes for individual map units are usually joined except where the individual map units are unconformable. The "unconformity" is shown in capital letters between boxes for units so separated.

The current Survey format for a typical geologic-map explanation is shown in figure 5. Its design is dictated by modern preparation procedures, especially the use of the typewriter. Information in the explanation falls into two categories, correlation of map units and description of map units. Somewhat different formats for map explanation are shown in Scott (1972) and Scott and Taylor (1974).

#### CORRELATION OF MAP UNITS

The correlation of map units shows the general interrelationships of all the mapped units. The size for an individual box is determined by the number of other mapped units to which it is equivalent. Where several vertical columns are necessary, the author may wish to title the columns (fig. 5), depending on the reason for separating them. To the right of the map-unit boxes are the group, series (not epoch), system, and, occasionally, era braces (in that order). The series and system braces are essential.

The lettering associated with all the braces is placed horizontally. The system (and era, if used) is in capital letters. Group and series terms are in capital and lowercase letters. On some maps of surficial geology, separate braces to the left of the series braces are used for the named glaciations. The glaciation names are printed in capital and lowercase letters. The words "system" and "series" are not shown on map explanations (Jurassic, *not* Jurassic System; Upper Jurassic, *not* Upper Jurassic Series), but the words "group" and "glaciation" are shown (Glen Canyon Group; Pinedale Glaciation).

#### DESCRIPTION OF MAP UNITS

The description of map units is an abbreviated account of the lithology, color, and thickness of the rocks in each map unit. Each map unit is described in order of increasing age; the upper member of a formation is thus described before the middle or lower members. A box showing the map-unit symbol appears in the left column. The name of the rock-stratigraphic unit and its position (usually the series term) are placed in capital letters to the right; for example,

Jm MORRISON FORMATION (UPPER JURASSIC) \* \* \*

## STRATIGRAPHIC MAP SYMBOLS

Letter symbols applied to map units on geologic maps are unique to each map; they consist of capital and lowercase letters that represent two kinds of information. The capitalized first letter (s) stands for one or several of the time-stratigraphic units listed below.

Quaternary	Q	Ordovician	O
Tertiary	T	Cambrian	€
Cretaceous	K	Cenozoic	Cz
Jurassic	J	Mesozoic	Mz
Triassic	Ƨ	Paleozoic	Pz
Permian	P	Precambrian	p€
Carboniferous	C	Precambrian Z	Z
Pennsylvanian	Ɔ	Precambrian Y	Y
Mississippian	M	Precambrian X	X
Devonian	D	Precambrian W	W
Silurian	S		

If the rocks mapped belong to two systems, the symbol for the youngest system is listed first. For example, a Quaternary and Tertiary assignment would be shown as QT. If one map unit is assigned to more than two systems, the symbols for the youngest and oldest systems can be selected. For example, Quaternary, Tertiary, and Cretaceous will be QK.

The second letter or group of letters is in lowercase and stands for the rock-stratigraphic unit name. The letter or letters are chosen usually from the initial letters of the name, formal or informal, applied to that map unit. Series terms are not indicated in the symbol. Group names are seldom part of the symbol.

Repetition of the position term, such as Cretaceous or Upper Cretaceous, as part of the map-unit name should be avoided if that designation is also shown on the right-side brace(s). A suitable lithologic term(s) should be applied to the map unit that has no formal name, and the first letter of the first word of that term should be selected as part of the map symbol; for example, the map symbol for Cretaceous sedimentary rocks could be shown as Ks.

The total number of symbols applied to one map unit should not be less than two nor more than four. Map symbols should be used only on maps and not in the text of a report.

Use of subscript letters and numbers in map symbols is discouraged. Proper placement of the subscript takes time that can be saved by using normally placed letters. However, use of subscript numbers for Tertiary and Quaternary terrace deposits is conventional. It is also the convention to assign the youngest or lowest terrace deposit the number 1. The older or higher terrace deposits have the higher numbers, 2, 3, and so forth.

If a mapped area consists entirely or almost entirely of rocks belonging to one system, such as Quaternary (as in Richmond and Pierce, 1972) or Precambrian (as in Sheridan and others, 1972), the symbol for the system may be dropped as part of the map symbol; for example, fg may be used for a Quaternary fan gravel or mb for a Precambrian migmatitic biotite gneiss.

## CORRELATION CHARTS AND STRATIGRAPHIC TABLES

The design of correlation charts and stratigraphic tables is complicated because their columns are read in both horizontal and vertical directions. Hierarchy or stratigraphic rank is shown for the geologic-time or time-stratigraphic and the rock-stratigraphic units by placing the largest or highest rank at the left side of each column. The units are given in order of increasing age, the youngest at the top and the oldest at the bottom.

As the terms are used here, correlation charts differ from stratigraphic tables in that the charts usually show the author's interpretation of rock-stratigraphic units in his report area and their ages as related to units that others have recognized elsewhere. A table usually lists, in proper age sequence (youngest at top and oldest at bottom), the rocks present in the report area. The sequence of vertical columns may give the age or position, name, thickness, lithology, and other pertinent information on each unit.

Time-stratigraphic or geologic-time terms are usually placed in the left-side columns of the chart or table. For readability, they may be repeated on the right side if the chart or table is large. Diagonal or vertical rules or shading usually connote missing rock; wavy or undulatory lines connote unconformities. All boxes for rock-stratigraphic units should be identified by name, whether the names are formal (Greenhorn Limestone) or informal (limestone or limestone member). The names are usually shown by capital and lowercase letters but the first letter of the first word in each entry, whether formal or informal, is capitalized. Abbreviations should generally be avoided, but if space is a problem the author may use one of the standard abbreviations and (or) he may expand the size of the box to accommodate the lettering (fig. 6: Wallace Creek Tongue), or he may give the box a footnote number and identify the rock unit by name in the footnote. Rarely, on some large tables, rock units are identified by a map symbol in the column (see, for example, Vecchioli and Miller, 1973, table 1). The symbol is usually explained in a headnote in which the rock-stratigraphic units are listed in proper stratigraphic sequence, the youngest explained first.

If a chart or table is a compilation of age and rock-unit assignments from several sources, the author may use individual headings at the top of each column. If the stratigraphy to be shown is extremely complex or poorly understood, the author may generalize by titling his chart

UPPER CRETACEOUS STAGE	HANNA BASIN		SOUTHEASTERN WIND RIVER BASIN		
Campanian	Mesaverde Group	Almond Formation	Lewis Shale		
		Pine Ridge Sandstone	Mesaverde Formation	Teapot Sandstone Member	
		Unnamed marine member		Unnamed middle member	
		Allen Ridge Formation		Parkman Sandstone Member	
		Unnamed upper member		Wallace Creek Tongue of Cody Shale	
		Hatfield Sandstone Member		Fales Sandstone Member	
		Haystack Mountains Formation	Unnamed middle member	Cody Shale (part)	
			O'Brien Spring Sandstone Member		
			Unnamed lower member		
			Tapers Ranch Sandstone Member		

FIGURE 6.—Typical chart showing correlation of Upper Cretaceous rocks. Abstracted from Gill and others (1970, p. 6, 7).

or table as "A list of \* \* \* (correlation of units shown in each column not implied)."

## MEASURED SECTIONS

Measured sections accompany most stratigraphic reports. They may be included in the rock-stratigraphic unit discussion in the body of the text as when a new name is being established (see Rubey, 1973, p. 110) or an old name is redefined, or, if numerous sections are recorded, they may be placed at the end of the text (see Stewart, 1970, p. 71-200).

The stratigraphic order of a measured section is the same as that used in tables and on map explanations: The youngest unit is listed first and the divisions of each unit are indented under it, descending in order of increasing age. The beds are numbered if the numbers are needed for convenient reference in other parts of the text or on illustrations. The rock term is given first and is followed by the descriptive terms. This form gives emphasis to the material in each bed rather than to the particular color, texture, or other features of the bed, but the device is effective only where the term to be emphasized comes first in the line; hence, it is unnecessary to invert the second term in a unit that includes material of two kinds: "Shale, sandy, and fine-grained sandstone" (not "and sandstone, fine-grained"). Note that hyphens are used between words combined to form unit modifiers that immediately follow the principal term and that are ordinarily hyphenated. The unit modifiers read back to the noun and are hyphenated as though they preceded it. It is not proper to read back beyond a semicolon or a period because the matter that follows such punctuation is not part of the first statement.

Color terms used in descriptions of rocks should be as specific as possible. Field recognition of particular geologic units by future workers is commonly aided if colors of the units in both wet and dry states are described. Exact color images are perhaps most effectively transferred from author to reader by reference to the "Rock-Color Chart." This chart, prepared in 1948 by the Rock-Color Chart Committee, E. N. Goddard, chairman, for the National Research Council and designed for field use, has remained in print and is now sold by the Geological Society of America, Boulder, CO 80301. Almost any color can be accurately and precisely described as to hue, value, and chroma by using a combination of the standard words and symbols from the chart. The process is one of direct comparison of the outcrop or hand specimen with the permanently painted color chips on the chart.

If the "Rock-Color Chart" is used, it should be used consistently. If it is not used, care must be exercised in choice of color terms so as to convey clear and consistent meaning to the reader. Where the more exact designations are not required, "olive drab," "apple green," "royal blue," and similar terms may carry meanings that are sufficiently definite to make their use appropriate.

Combination color terms, like the three just mentioned, are separate words, but such terms are hyphenated when they are unit modifiers:

reddish brown  
dark green  
orange red

reddish-brown siltstone  
iron-gray shale  
milky-white chert

The following sample measured section, the type section for a newly named rock-stratigraphic unit is abstracted and slightly modified from Green (1974, p. D3).

	Thickness (equivalents)	
	Meters	Feet
Entrada Sandstone (Jurassic):		
Middle siltstone member. Not measured; contact with Iyanbito Member conformable.		
Iyanbito Member:		
16. Sandstone, moderate-reddish-orange (10R 6/6); high-angle crossbedded; medium to fine grained, well sorted, subrounded to well rounded, friable; mainly clear iron-stained quartz with minor dark accessory minerals; contains large amount of milky-white chert	5.79	19.0
15. Claystone and siltstone, dark-reddish-brown (10R 3/4); flat lens-shaped bed; laterally discontinuous	.03	.1
14. Sandstone, moderate-reddish-orange (10R 6/6), massive to crossbedded, fine- to very fine grained, well-sorted; subrounded to well-rounded grains	2.13	7.0
13. Sandy siltstone, moderate-reddish-orange (10R 5/6), massive to flat-bedded; calcareous locally; similar to middle siltstone member; polygonal mudcracks on upper bedding surface	5.18	17.0
12. Claystone and siltstone; same as unit 15	.1	.3
11. Sandstone, pale-yellowish-orange (10YR 8/6); upper few centimeters "bleached" greenish gray (5GY 8/1); crossbedded, fine grained, well sorted; subrounded to well-rounded grains; friable; calcareous locally; some silty zones and stringer; white chert abundant	.61	2.0
10. Claystone and siltstone; same as unit 15	.1	.3
9. Sandstone; same as unit 11	1.22	4.0
8. Siltstone, reddish-brown (10R 6/4), massive; calcite cemented along lower surface	1.83	6.0
7. Sandstone, moderate-reddish-orange (10R 5/6), crossbedded, medium- to fine-grained, well-sorted; subrounded to well-rounded grains of white, pink, clear, yellow, brown, and black quartz. Crossbeds dip an average of 20° SW	3.05	10.0
6. Sandstone; same as unit 11	3.05	10.0
5. Sandy siltstone; same as unit 13	2.44	8.0
4. Sandstone; same as unit 7	2.13	7.0
3. Claystone and siltstone; same as unit 15	.03	.1
2. Sandstone; same as unit 7	10.21	33.5
1. Sandstone, yellowish-gray (5Y 8/1), grayish-red (5R 4/2), and moderate-reddish-orange (10R 7/6), massive to crossbedded; coarse to fine grained, with pebbles and granules as much as 6 mm (about ¼ in.) across of white, black, clear, yellowish-green, gray, and pink quartz. Unit fills mudcracks as much as 1.2 m (4 ft) deep at the top of the underlying Owl Rock Member of the Chinle Formation	0.3	1.0
Total thickness of the Iyanbito Member	38.2	125.3
Chinle Formation (Triassic):		
Owl Rock Member: not measured; contact with overlying Iyanbito Member unconformable.		

## INTERNAL CONSISTENCY

When the author has completed his report, he should compare the abstract, stratigraphic charts, tables, map explanations, and text sections. Whether a rock-stratigraphic unit has a formal name, as Franklin Canyon Formation of Devonian (?) age, or an informal name, as a gabbro of Tertiary age, it must be recognizable in all parts of the report by that name and age.

## MEDIA FOR PUBLISHING STRATIGRAPHIC INFORMATION

Before completing his report, the author of a paper containing stratigraphic information should consider, and discuss with his supervisor, the publication medium best suited for his work. Length, complexity of figures, of tables, or of stratigraphic changes, report area, and subject matter should be assessed in relation to the readers the author hopes to reach. For example, a paper of 20 double-spaced pages is too long for chapter A, "Contributions to Stratigraphy"; large maps and correlation charts even if compressed may not fit the size of a given medium; an International Geological Congress volume might not be the best publication for name changes for rocks in a small area of Colorado; a report on Quaternary terminology might reach the largest number of interested people in a journal devoted to study of that particular system. Certain types of reports, because of their format or lack of availability (open-file, for instance), are not proper vehicles for nomenclature changes (see art. 13 (c,e) of the Code).

### *U.S. Geological Survey publications*

The Survey Bulletin or the Professional Paper series can be selected by the author when important stratigraphic information is included within an areal geologic report. The final selection of publication series is determined largely by the size of the illustrations, charts, and tables.

In 1963 the Survey started a special Bulletin series titled "Contributions to Stratigraphy" that is designed especially for the publication of stratigraphic papers. Chapter A always includes a listing of nomenclature changes adopted by the Survey for the year past as well as all short stratigraphic papers submitted by individual authors. The long papers are published as individual chapters and are given an alphabetical designation (B-Z, if 25 are submitted); they are published individually in order of receipt.

A brief description of all the stratigraphic nomenclature changes shown on Geologic Quadrangle and Miscellaneous Investigations Maps

should be added below the map explanation. If a new name is introduced, care should be taken to include all the pertinent information required for a new name because the map will have the first and, in some cases, the only published definition of the name.

For maps in other series, any new names, age changes, and other stratigraphic changes must be adequately described in a brief text on the map. At the time of approval by GNC, a copy of the text will be made and sent to the National Center at Reston, Va., for inclusion, under the author's name, in chapter A of "Contributions to Stratigraphy."

### *Publications restrictions*

New stratigraphic names or significant stratigraphic changes should not be introduced in an abstract that is to be published separately from a more complete report. The essential conciseness of an abstract does not permit the full definition that is specified by the Code. In the abstract, an informal designation (for example, limestone of, at, or near Hudson) should be used for the stratigraphic unit that is to be named, and the unit should be described later in a more complete report.

Guidebooks are not generally used as a medium for naming new stratigraphic units because guidebook distribution and availability to the scientific public are limited.

A report containing new formal geologic names will be approved for open filing by the Director only when it accompanies or follows a standard publication in which the new names are introduced in the usual way. Age changes and other significant stratigraphic changes of established units will not be officially adopted on the basis of an open-file report.

A thesis prepared in connection with Survey work must be placed in open file. In preparing the thesis, the author should check proposed stratigraphic changes with a review staff member.

## STRATIGRAPHIC STYLE AND EXPRESSION

### *Abbreviations*

Rock-stratigraphic, geologic-time, and time-stratigraphic terms should usually not be abbreviated. On charts, tables, graphs, and maps, if space is limited, the following abbreviations are acceptable. Periods are used in charts, tables, and graphs, but generally not on maps.

<i>Term or lithology</i>	<i>Abbreviation</i>	
	<i>Formal</i>	<i>Informal</i>
Group	Gp.	
Formation	Fm.	
Member	Mbr.	mbr.
Sandstone	Ss.	ss.
Siltstone	Sts.	sts.
Shale	Sh.	sh.
Limestone	Ls.	ls.
Dolomite	Dol.	dol.
Conglomerate	Cgl.	cgl.
Quartzite	Qtz.	qtz.
Volcanics	Volc.	volc.

<i>System, period, or era</i>	<i>Abbreviation</i>
Quaternary	Quat.
Tertiary	Tert.
Cretaceous	Cret.
Jurassic	Jur.
Triassic	Tri.
Permian	Perm.
Pennsylvanian	Penn.
Mississippian	Miss.
Devonian	Dev.
Silurian	Sil.
Ordovician	Ord.
Cambrian	Camb.
Cenozoic	Cen.
Mesozoic	Mes.
Paleozoic	Pal.
Precambrian	Prec.

### *Diverse time terms*

#### DIVISIONS OF THE PRECAMBRIAN

Divisions of the Precambrian (table 1a) are based on isotopic or radiometric ages expressed in millions of years (m.y.). In Survey reports these divisions have currently replaced the more generally defined age divisions like Azoic, Archeozoic, Proterozoic, Algonkian, and Archean. However, the terms "Archean" for rocks 2,500 m.y. and older and "Proterozoic" for rocks 2,500 to 570 m.y. in age are being used by some geologists.

The divisions of the Precambrian are considered formal, although they have not been assigned formally to a specific part, such as systems, of the stratigraphic hierarchy. The scheme of these divisions has been devised simply to aid in the understanding of the Precambrian history of the United States. The time boundaries have been chosen so as to split as few of the known epochs of sedimentation, orogeny, and plutonism as possible. Intentionally, the boundaries do not correspond to

geologic events. The scheme is intended as an interim measure, pending development of an internationally accepted standard.

Some geologists believe that the informal terms "lower," "middle," and "upper" (or "early," "middle," and "late") Precambrian are meaningful, but these terms may have only local application in that the lower (or early) Precambrian in a given area, region, or State may not be equivalent to other rocks of the same position (or age) assignment in another area, region, or State.

#### PHANEROZOIC

The Phanerozoic Eon, which consists of the Paleozoic, Mesozoic, and Cenozoic Eras, has not been officially adopted by the Survey, but the term may be used in book reports when needed for convenience. No map symbol has been reserved for it. Alternatives to use of the term include use of all three terms listed above or the one term "post-Precambrian."

#### CARBONIFEROUS

The term "Carboniferous Systems" may be used when the Mississippian and Pennsylvanian Systems are not differentiated on maps, charts, and tables and in texts. However, use of the term is not required.

#### DIVISIONS OF THE TERTIARY

The terms "Paleogene" and "Neogene" have been used by some European geologists as divisions of the Tertiary System. In Survey reports, the Paleogene includes the Paleocene, Eocene, and Oligocene Series; the Neogene includes the Miocene and Pliocene Series. Some geologists have included the Pleistocene in the Neogene and some include both the Pleistocene and Holocene. The Paleogene and Neogene are neither part of the formal stratigraphic hierarchy defined in the Code nor part of the Survey's official nomenclature. The terms may be used in texts but not on map explanations, columnar sections, and correlation charts. No map symbols have been reserved for them.

#### PROVINCIAL LAND-MAMMAL AGES OF THE TERTIARY

Wood and others (1941, p. 8-13) devised a provincial time scale for the series of the Tertiary of the North American continent. The basis for each name is a rock-stratigraphic unit term or the name of a well-known local fauna with an added "an" or "ian" ending to distinguish the names as age terms. However, the most recent edition of the Code specifically states that it is improper to convert a rock-stratigraphic term to a time term by adding such endings (art. 34(a)). These pro-

TABLE 1a.—Major stratigraphic and time divisions

[Compiled by Geologic Names Committee, U.S. Geological Survey]

Terms designating time are in parentheses. Informal time terms ("early," "middle," and "late") may be used for the eras, for periods, and for epochs where there is no formal subdivision into Early, Middle, and Late. Informal rock terms ("lower," "middle," and "upper") may be used where there is no formal subdivision of an era, system, or series.

Estimates for ages of time boundaries are under continuous study and are subject to refinement and controversy. Two scales are given for comparison. If neither Geological Society of London nor Berggren reference is used, author should cite the published source he follows. A useful time scale for North American mammalian ages is given by Evernden and others (1964, p. 145-198).

Subdivision in use by the U.S. Geological Survey			Age estimates commonly used for boundaries (in m.y.)	
Era or Erathem	System or Period	Series (Epoch)	Geological Society of London (1964, p. 260-262)	Berggren (1972, p. 195-215)
Cenozoic	Quaternary	Holocene (Holocene)		
		Pleistocene (Pleistocene)		
	Tertiary	Pliocene (Pliocene)		1.8
		Miocene (Miocene)		5.0
		Oligocene (Oligocene)		22.5
		Eocene (Eocene)		37.5
		Paleocene (Paleocene)		53.5
Mesozoic	Cretaceous <sup>1</sup>	Upper (Late)	65	65
		Lower (Early)		
	Jurassic	Upper (Late)	136	
		Middle (Middle)		
		Lower (Early)	190-195	
	Triassic	Upper (Late)		
Middle (Middle)				
Paleozoic	Permian <sup>1</sup>	Upper (Late)	225	
		Lower (Early)		
	Pennsylvanian <sup>1</sup>	Upper (Late)	280	
		Middle (Middle)		
		Lower (Early)	320	
	Mississippian <sup>1</sup>	Upper (Late)		
		Lower (Early)	345	
	Devonian	Upper (Late)		
Middle (Middle)				
Lower (Early)		395		
Silurian <sup>1</sup>	Upper (Late)			
	Middle (Middle)			
Ordovician <sup>1</sup>	Upper (Late)	430-440		
	Middle (Middle)			
	Lower (Early)			
Precambrian	Cambrian <sup>1</sup>	Upper (Late)	500	
		Middle (Middle)		
	Lower (Early)			
	Precambrian Z <sup>3</sup>		570	
Precambrian Y <sup>3</sup>		600		
Precambrian X <sup>3</sup>		1,600		
Precambrian W <sup>3</sup>		2,500		

<sup>1</sup> Includes provincial series accepted for use in U.S. Geological Survey reports. See facing page.

<sup>2</sup> Geological Society of London (1964, p. 222).

<sup>3</sup> Informal time divisions.

TABLE 1b.—*Provincial series accepted for use in U.S. Geological Survey reports*

[Compiled by Geologic Names Committee, U.S. Geological Survey]

Series	Age	Region
Gulfian -----	Late Cretaceous -----	Texas, Louisiana, Oklahoma, Arkansas, Mississippi, and Alabama.
Comanchean -----	Early and Late Cretaceous -----	
Coahuilan -----	Early Cretaceous -----	
Ochoan -----	Late Permian -----	Texas and New Mexico.
Guadalupian -----	Early and Late Permian -----	
Leonardian -----	Early Permian -----	
Wolfcampian -----	Early Permian -----	
Virgilian -----	Late Pennsylvanian -----	Arkansas, Oklahoma, Kansas, Missouri, Nebraska, and Iowa.
Missourian -----	do -----	
Des Moinesian -----	Middle Pennsylvanian -----	
Atokan -----	do -----	
Morrowan -----	Early and Middle Pennsylvanian -----	
Chesterian -----	Late Mississippian -----	
Meramecian -----	do -----	Indiana, Kentucky, Tennessee, Illinois, Iowa, Missouri, and Arkansas.
Osagean -----	Early Mississippian -----	
Kinderhookian -----	do -----	
Cayugan -----	Late Silurian -----	
Niagaran -----	Middle Silurian -----	New York, Michigan, and Wisconsin.
Alexandrian -----	Early Silurian -----	
Cincinnatian -----	Late Ordovician -----	Ohio, Indiana, Kentucky, Tennessee, Michigan, Wisconsin, and Iowa.
Mohawkian -----	Middle Ordovician -----	New York, Michigan, Wisconsin, and Iowa.
Canadian -----	Early Ordovician -----	United States.
St. Croixian -----	Late Cambrian -----	Iowa, Minnesota, Wisconsin, and Michigan.

vincial ages also are not part of the Survey's formal nomenclature nor are they part of the formal stratigraphic hierarchy, but they are used in many reports; specific reference to the chart of Wood and others (1941) should be made when the terms are used.

## NEOGLACIATION

"Neoglaciation" is a term used by some geologists to designate a re-advance of the ice following the Hypsithermal (Thermal Maximum) interval. The term may be used only in reference to mountain areas where cirques and glaciers formed following the Hypsithermal (Mayer Rubin, oral commun., June 23, 1969).

*Early, Middle, and Late vs. Lower, Middle, and Upper*

The Survey makes a careful distinction between the use of time (geologic-time) and position (time-stratigraphic) terms. Many of the divisions of these two classification schemes are recognized internationally and have type or standard sections outside the United States. The initial letters of the formal or defined terms are capitalized; those of informal terms are not. Only formal terms are shown on table 1a, b. Mesozoic Era, Jurassic Period, Late Jurassic Epoch are formal time terms. The corresponding formal position terms are Mesozoic Erathem, Jurassic System, Upper Jurassic Series. Certain time and position terms,

such as early Mesozoic, late Paleocene, upper Quaternary, and lower Oligocene, are considered informal.

Provincial series terms are accepted as part of the formal nomenclature (table 1) for local areas and regions. The initial letters of each word are capitalized, as Gulfian Provincial Series.

The age of fossils is usually expressed by geologic-time terms. For example, fossils of Early Devonian age are Early Devonian fossils. But when it is necessary to distinguish between the organism and its residue, the time-stratigraphic term may be more appropriate: Fossils from Lower Devonian rocks are Lower Devonian fossils.

### *Formal nomenclature, examples*

Stratigraphic classification schemes are listed below, and the appropriate articles of the 1970 edition of the "Code of Stratigraphic Nomenclature" are cited in parentheses.

- A. Rock-stratigraphic units (art. 4-17)
  1. Absaroka Volcanic Supergroup
    - Thorofare Creek Group
      - Wiggins Formation
      - Tepee Trail Formation
      - Two Ocean Formation
      - Langford Formation
        - Promontory Member
  2. Pierre Shale
    - Sharon Springs Member
    - Ardmore Bentonite Bed
  3. Italian Mountain Intrusive Complex
  4. Niobrara Chalk
    - Niobrara Shale
    - Niobrara Formation
    - Niobrara Limestone
    - Niobrara Member of the Mancos Shale (Colorado)
    - Niobrara Member of the Cody Shale (Montana)
- B. Time-stratigraphic units (art. 26-35)
  - Mesozoic Erathem
    - Cretaceous System
      - Upper Cretaceous Series
        - Maestrichtian Stage
- C. Geologic-time units (art. 36-38)
  - Phanerozoic Eon
    - Mesozoic Era
      - Cretaceous Period
        - Late Cretaceous Epoch
          - Maestrichtian Age

## D. Geologic-climate units (art. 39, 40)

Wisconsin Glaciation

Tazewell Stage

Two Creeks Interstade

Sangamon Interglaciation

*Capitalization*

Capitalization of the initial letters of formal geologic names was adopted by the Survey, along with the 1960 Code, in 1961. Geologic names in material quoted directly from sources written before that time should follow the usage of the original author. However, names in material that is paraphrased should be capitalized when adapted for use in manuscripts, tables, charts, and map explanations, even though they were not capitalized by the original author.

Examples of the proper capitalization of geologic terms are given below.

Jurassic System

Jurassic Period

Kimmeridgian Age

Oxfordian Stage

Upper Jurassic Series

Late Jurassic Epoch

the Upper Jurassic Morrison Formation

the Morrison Formation (Upper Jurassic)

the Morrison Formation of Late Jurassic age

Morrison age

early Bathonian age

Morrison time

the Morrison (?) Formation

the Morrison equivalent

equivalent to the Morrison

Dewey Lake Red Beds

Florissant Lake Beds

Vulcan Iron-formation

Traders Iron-Bearing Member

Elkhorn Mountains Volcanics

Ramey Ridge Complex

*Diacritical marks*

Use of diacritical marks in stratigraphic nomenclature and description is governed by the same principles that apply in use with personal and geographic names (p. 165, this text). The marks are not used on

anglicized words of foreign origin, on place names containing both foreign and English words, or on names of foreign origin applied to places in the United States. In reports on geology of foreign countries and on a territory or possession of the United States whose official language is not English, place names and other foreign words are generally written as they are used in the native language.

### *Undesirable expressions*

Certain types of expressions should be avoided in geologic manuscripts:

1. Slang

Permo-Penn., for Permian and Pennsylvanian

Cambro-Ordovician, for Cambrian and Ordovician

Je, as a shorthand version of Entrada Sandstone in a text

2. Unusual abbreviations

Westwater Can. M or Westwater Member for Westwater Canyon Member

3. Misuse of rank term

Series (a time-stratigraphic term) when Supergroup (a rock-stratigraphic term) is meant

### *Expressions for degrees of doubt*

"Probably," "presumably," "may be," and "(?)" are used to express doubt about the correct rock-stratigraphic, geologic-time, or time-stratigraphic assignment. The aspect that is in doubt must be easily understood. For example, if a unit is "probably of Late Mississippian age," the practice of placing a query in parentheses is the most easily understood method. No one will be confused by Late (?) Mississippian.

When the identification of a geologic name is in doubt, the query is placed in parentheses after the geographic name, as Morrison (?) Formation.

### *Formal vs. informal names*

Formal rock-stratigraphic units are those names that are defined in conformity with requirements of the Code (art. 3-17). For example, the Entrada Sandstone and its Dewey Bridge Member are formal units because they have type localities and their areal extent, lithology, contacts, and age have been described in a publication. The medial silty member of the Entrada Sandstone is not a formally defined member of that formation and is not capitalized. It has no type locality, and no published description is required for its use. The medial silty member of one author may or may not be the same unit as the one mapped as medial silty member by another author.

Formal names that have not been adopted by the Survey should be used with a citation, as Brachton Clay of Lewis (1881), the first time they appear in a text. References in abstracts should be avoided, but full reference should be given if used. The citation does not have to be repeated each time the term is used in the text, but repetition is advisable on tables, charts, and figures.

### *Quotation marks*

Quotation marks are sometimes used around stratigraphic names by an author to indicate that the term has been abandoned or to imply misnomer or misapplication of the name. Because of the varied use and implications attached to the meaning of quotation marks, their usage in the stratigraphic context of a report should be explained, where practicable, by a brief statement.

### *Units of economic, local, subsurface, or regional interest*

The names by which stratigraphic units of economic interest are known locally, such as oil sands, coal beds, and construction or ornamental stone, are considered informal names. Usually, only the first letter of the first word is capitalized. The text should state that the names are of local or economic interest or are used for subsurface units. Examples of such terms are:

Baker producing sand	Marker bed
Big Blue sand	Mineral coal bed
Blue Creek seam	Ore bed
Butte coal zone	Reef beds
Button beds	St. David cyclothem
Mahogany oil-shale bed	Vermont marble

Where the term has been replaced by a formal name, that name should be given preference. The economic term can be put in parentheses as follows:

Greenbrier Limestone (Big Lime)  
Saltsburg Sandstone Member (Little Dunkard sand)

The terms "facies" and "sequence" are not part of the formal rock-stratigraphic classification scheme and are not capitalized, even though some geologists use them for names of rocks in local and regional areas. Terms such as Catskill facies and Sauk sequence are considered informal.

Names of intruded masses of igneous rocks, such as dike, sill, stock, pluton, batholith, and laccolith, are also not part of the formal rock-stratigraphic classification, though some such features have been as-

signed names such as the Idaho batholith and the Birch Creek pluton. In the descriptive material on map explanations and in texts, the lithology, rather than the structural form, should be emphasized, for example, "granodiorite of the Idaho batholith" or "quartz monzonite of the Birch Creek pluton."

Water-bearing rock units, or aquifers, may be named, but only where stratigraphic names cannot be used, for example, if the aquifer crosses stratigraphic boundaries or if an aquifer is known to exist but the local stratigraphy has not been worked out. To avoid confusion with stratigraphic units, aquifers to be named should be given broad regional names, such as the Floridan aquifer. The term "aquifer" is not capitalized.

For stratigraphic units that have been formally named and that are water bearing, the term "aquifer" may be used instead of the formal rock-stratigraphic term, for example, Jackson aquifer for Jackson Group or Catahoula aquifer for Catahoula Formation. If a single aquifer includes two or more named rock-stratigraphic units (Romero and Hampton, 1972), such as the Laramie and Fox Hills Formations, the name Laramie-Fox Hills aquifer may be used.

On maps showing hydrologic units, special symbols may be used for the aquifers, such as Fa for Floridan aquifer or Ja for Jackson aquifer.

Where formally named water-bearing rock-stratigraphic units are called aquifers, the description on the map explanation and in the text should make clear that these units are formal rock-stratigraphic units but that they are called aquifers on the map and in the text to emphasize their water-bearing character.

## REFERENCES

- American Commission on Stratigraphic Nomenclature, 1970, Code of stratigraphic nomenclature: Tulsa, Okla., American Association of Petroleum Geologists, 21 p.
- Berggren, W. A., 1972, A Cenozoic time-scale—some implications for regional geology and paleobiogeography: *Lethaia*, v. 5, no. 2, p. 195–215.
- Cohee, G. V., and Wright, W. R., 1975, Changes in stratigraphic nomenclature by the U.S. Geological Survey, 1973: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1395-A, p. A1–A49.
- Evernden, J. F., and others, 1964; Potassium-argon dates and the Cenozoic mammalian chronology of North America: *American Journal of Science*, v. 262, p. 145–198.
- Gary, Margaret, McAfee, Robert, Jr., and Wolf, C. L., eds., 1972, Glossary of geology: American Geological Institute, 805 p.
- Geological Society of London, 1964, Summary of the Phanerozoic time scale—the Geological Society Phanerozoic time-scale 1964, in Harland, W. B., Smith, A. G., and Wilcock, B., eds., *The Phanerozoic time scale—a symposium: Quarterly Journal*, v. 120s, p. 260–262.
- Gill, J. B., Merewether, B. A., and Cobban, W. A., 1970, Stratigraphy and nomenclature of some Upper Cretaceous and lower Tertiary rocks in south-central Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 667, 53 p.

- Goddard, E. N., chm., and others, 1948, Rock-color chart: National Research Council; reprinted by Geological Society of America, 1951, 1963, 1970, 6 p.
- Green, M. W., 1974, The Iyanbito Member (a new stratigraphic unit) of the Jurassic Entrada Sandstone, Gallup-Grants area, New Mexico: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1395-D, 12 p.
- International Subcommittee on Stratigraphic Classification \* \* \*, Hedberg, H. D., ed., 1976, International stratigraphic guide—a guide to stratigraphic classification, terminology, and procedure: New York, John Wiley, 200 p.
- Keroher, G. C., 1970, Lexicon of geologic names of the United States for 1961–1967: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1350, 848 p.
- Keroher, G. C., and others, 1966, Lexicon of geologic names of the United States for 1936–1960: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1200, 4,341 p.
- Oriel, S. S., 1975, Stratigraphic Commission Note 41—application for amendment of Article 8 of Code concerning smallest formal rock-stratigraphic unit: American Association of Petroleum Geologists Bulletin, v. 59, no. 1, p. 134–135.
- Pepper, J. D., 1977, Bedrock geologic map of the Hampden Quadrangle, Massachusetts and Connecticut: U.S. Geological Survey Geologic Quadrangle Map GQ–1368, scale, 1:24,000.
- Richmond, G. M., and Pierce, K. L., 1972, Surficial Geologic Map of the Eagle Peak Quadrangle, Yellowstone National Park and adjoining area, Wyoming: U.S. Geological Survey Miscellaneous Geologic Investigations Map I-637.
- Romero, J. C., and Hampton, E. R., 1972, Maps showing the approximate configuration and depth to the top of the Laramie-Fox Hills aquifer, Denver Basin, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Miscellaneous Geological Investigations Map I-791.
- Rubey, W. W., 1972, New Cretaceous formations in the western Wyoming thrust belt: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1372-I, p. 11–135.
- Scott, G. R., 1972, Geologic map of the Morrison Quadrangle, Jefferson County, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Miscellaneous Geological Investigations Map I-790-A.
- Scott, G. R., and Taylor, R. B., 1974, Reconnaissance geologic map of the Electric Peak Quadrangle, Custer and Saguache Counties, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Miscellaneous Field Studies Map MF-628.
- Sheridan, D. M., Reed, J. C., Jr., and Bryant, Bruce, 1972 [1973], Geologic map of the Evergreen Quadrangle, Jefferson County, Colorado: U.S. Geological Survey Miscellaneous Geologic Investigations Map I-786.
- Stewart, J. H., 1970, Upper Precambrian and Lower Cambrian strata in the southern Great Basin, California and Nevada: U.S. Geological Survey Professional Paper 620, 206 p.
- Vecchioli, John, and Miller, E. G., 1973, Water resources of the New Jersey part of the Ramapo River Basin: U.S. Geological Survey Water-Supply Paper 1974, 77 p.
- Wilmarth, M. G., 1938, Lexicon of geologic names of the United States: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 896, 2,396 p.
- Wilson, Druid, Keroher, G. C., and Hansen, B. B., 1959, Index to the geologic names of North America: U.S. Geological Survey Bulletin 1056-B, p. 407–622.